



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

Price 1s. 6d.

THE YOUNG COMPOSER;

Or, PROGRESSIVE EXERCISES IN ENGLISH COMPOSITION; Part I, comprising Sentence-making, Variety of Expression, and Figurative Language, with Appendices on Punctuation, &c. By JAMES CORNWELL.

"The plan of this work is very superior."—*Westminster Review*.

"Mr. Cornwell has furnished an admirable work. We have no hesitation in recommending the addition of the 'Young Composer' to the regular contents of every satchel."—*Colonial Magazine*.

"A happy attempt."—*Church of England Quarterly*.

"We have been gratified with the progressive character of this work. Its simplicity is one of its chief recommendations."—*Wesleyan Magazine*.

"An ingenious set of exercises to supply the juvenile tyro with the raw materials of Composition."—*Spectator*.

"We earnestly recommend the adoption of the author's method to all teachers who have at heart the due development of the learner's thinking faculties."—*Patriot*.

~~~~~  
Eighth Edition, 1s. 9d. cloth; 2s. red leather.

## ALLEN AND CORNWELL'S SCHOOL GRAMMAR;

With very copious Exercises, and a Systematic View of the Formation and Derivation of Words, comprising Anglo-Saxon, Latin, and Greek Lists, which explain the Etymology of above 7000 English Words.

"The excellence of the Grammars of the late Dr. Allen and Mr. Cornwell makes us almost despair of witnessing any decided improvement in this department."—*Athenæum*.

"This intelligible and very useful little work realizes more of our conception of a good School Grammar than any other we know."—*Gent. Mag.*

"A school book which we can conscientiously recommend."—*Tait*.

"Written by persons profoundly acquainted with the sources of our language. This Grammar will make its way in schools."—*Ch. of Eng. Quar.*

"While this is undoubtedly the most philosophical, we believe it will be found the easiest Grammar yet published."—*Eclectic*.

"An English Grammar which we do not hesitate to characterise as by far the best teaching manual on the subject."—*Patriot*.

"We know of no work of its class we would at all compare with it."—*Christian Examiner*.

"As soon as a pupil is master of this Grammar, we will venture to say he will have no need of any other. The second section, on the Formation and Derivation of Words, is worth more than twice the price of the book."—*Lincoln Standard*.

~~~~~  
Also, Fifth Edition, 9d. sewed; 1s. cloth.

GRAMMAR FOR BEGINNERS;

AN INTRODUCTION TO THE ABOVE.

"As good a book as can be used."—*Spectator*.

"A choice, easy, and cheap introduction. Children will receive it with good will and a hearty welcome."—*Teacher's Magazine*.

"We think it admirably adapted to children, from its clearness and simplicity, and from the thoroughness of its treatment. Thus the whole course is systematic."—*Scholastic Quarterly*.

"We have never seen a more

SIMPKIN, MARSHALL

45. 19.



AN
ENGLISH SCHOOL GRAMMAR,
WITH
VERY COPIOUS EXERCISES,
AND
A SYSTEMATIC VIEW
OF THE
FORMATION AND DERIVATION OF WORDS,
COMPRISING
ANGLO-SAXON, LATIN, & GREEK LISTS,
WHICH EXPLAIN
THE ETYMOLOGY OF ABOVE SEVEN THOUSAND ENGLISH
WORDS.

BY
ALEXANDER ALLEN, PH. D.,
AND
JAMES CORNWELL.

FIFTH EDITION.

LONDON:
SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, & Co., STATIONERS' COURT.
1845.

Price 1s. cloth ; 9d. stiff cover.

GRAMMAR FOR BEGINNERS:

Being an Introduction to Allen and Cornwell's English School Grammar. By the same Authors.

"As good a book as can be used."—*Spectator*.

'We have never seen a more desirable elementary work.'—*Court Journ.*

SIMPKIN & MARSHALL, Stationers' Court.

ABBREVIATIONS.

1. The Numbers in brackets, as (25), refer to the numbered paragraphs of the Book.
2. The Numbers with S., or L., or G., as (L. 19), refer to the Numbers in the Anglo-Saxon, Latin, and Greek Lists respectively.
3. *fr.* means *from*.
4. *w.* means *with*.
5. P.N. means *Proper Name*.



Printed by J. L. Cox & Sons, 75, Great Queen Street,
Lincoln's-Inn Fields.

PREFACE.

THE following Work differs in many important respects from most others bearing a similar title. Its main peculiarities are these :—

1. The Etymology has been treated much more fully than is usual ; and the formation of the primary, Saxon, and purely English Derivatives is now, perhaps, for the first time, taught in a School Grammar.

2. The Verbs, commonly called Irregular, are arranged in regular classes ; and the Plurals, commonly called Irregular, are classified and explained.

3. The arrangement of the Tenses of the Verb, usually very complicated and perplexing, has been much simplified.

4. The Potential Mood, which, singularly enough, some grammarians have confounded with the Subjunctive, has been retained as a Mood, in order to avoid introducing a new term into English Grammar. The Auxiliaries of the Potential might be called, as in German, Verbs of Mood.

5. The Rules of Syntax have been distributed under certain main divisions or headings (RULES 1, 2, 3, 4, &c.), and subdivisions (RULES 1. A.—1. B.—1. C.—&c.). This arrangement, it is believed, will be found very conducive to perspicuity, and a considerable aid to the memory.

6. Almost every paragraph is numbered throughout the book, so that any remark or rule can be easily and quickly referred to.


7. Almost every fresh Definition, Rule, Observation, Caution, &c., has an Exercise upon it. As soon as any information is imparted, the pupil is called on to act upon

it. The Instructions and the Exercises, so to speak, keep pace with one another. By thus limiting the object, the judgment may be exercised upon it more correctly.

8. None of the Exercises contain bad English to be put into good. The exclusion of that pernicious practice, which has become almost universal in School Grammars, forms an important feature of the work.

9. Many usages and phrases, purely idiomatic and sanctioned by our best writers, which, however, have been condemned as bad in some School Grammars, probably from want of acquaintance, or from a deficient acquaintance, with the older forms of the language, and with the genius of the whole family of tongues to which ours belongs, have been regarded as genuine English, and reduced to rule. (*See Sections 294, 297, 352, 370.*)

10. A Form of Parsing will be found at the end of the book (p. 160). No *separate* Parsing Exercises have been given, since all the Exercises in the book may be used for this purpose; and they contain every requisite variety of construction.

11. A word or two may be added touching the way of using the Exercises. The directions prefixed to them (after the ) suppose the pupil to write them out on paper, or on a slate; but they may also be done orally, or on the black board, or otherwise, with a slight alteration of the directions.

12. While the Authors have sought to state things in a way consistent with sound views of language, they have, when forced to choose between the two, preferred a practical to a scientific arrangement or explanation. For young learners it would have been out of place to follow any other plan. As *illustrations* of what is meant, reference may be made to Sections 259, 367, 377, 380, 394.

On the importance of a knowledge of Grammar generally, it is unnecessary to say more, than that an ignorance of it is a disgrace, and an evil for which hardly any

thing can make up. A person who does not understand Grammar can scarce think correctly, for he cannot speak correctly; and correct speaking generally accompanies (logically) correct thinking. The study of Grammar, too, has been shewn, by an overwhelming amount of experience, to be the very best instrument for calling out and strengthening the powers of the mind.

English Grammar, in particular, it is necessary to study, distinctly from other Grammar, because of its peculiarities in genius and structure. It is sometimes said that English is learnt well enough by hearing good English spoken. If *only* good English were heard by children, the argument *might* be worth *something*; but as long as they hear so much bad English spoken, as they often do, it can have no weight at all. Besides, to know *what* is right is not the same thing as to know *why* it is right; and Grammar teaches not only *how* to speak correctly, but also *why* one mode of speaking is right and another wrong.

Without a knowledge of some of the kindred languages, the Authors would not have ventured on the composition of this work; well knowing, that a Grammar of any language, written independently of a comparison with others of the same family, must inevitably fall into ridiculous mistakes.

The Authors intend shortly to publish an Introduction to English Composition, the object of which will be, in the first place, to teach the accurate construction of sentences, as *sentences* (not as exemplifying this or that Rule of government, agreement, &c.), and in the next place to lead the pupil gradually on to expressing his *own* thoughts on any given subject, in his own words, with facility and precision, and to the practice of what is commonly called writing themes. In this work constant reference will be made to the Grammar.

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

THE Authors have been much gratified by the high opinion which has been pronounced upon their Work by eminent scholars and teachers, as well as by the Press. The unusually rapid sale of a large edition has rendered a second necessary. And, in preparing this, the Authors have not only availed themselves of various suggestions which have been made by others, but have spared no pains on their own part to make the book complete, and fitted for general adoption. The following improvements, among others, have been made:—

(1.) All the DEFINITIONS, RULES, &c., which are to be *committed to memory*, have been printed in a large type; and thus are at once distinguished from the EXPLANATIONS and OBSERVATIONS, which are to be *read*, and from the EXERCISES, which are to be *written*. All tables and lists, of course, must be learnt.

(2.) Copious Lists of the principal Derivatives from Anglo-Saxon, Latin, and Greek have been given; and throughout the whole Section on the Formation and Derivation of Words, Exercises have been added, which will at once test and facilitate the pupil's comprehension of the subject. Owing to the change of type, there is no increase in the size or price of the Work; yet it will be seen that these Lists fill many pages, and explain the Derivation of above seven thousand English words.

(3.) The longer Rules have been shortened, where it could be done without making them less simple; and some of the more important Exercises have been lengthened.

(4.) A Table of the Verb has been given, p. 162, which, used in connection with the Blank Form suggested in the Note, has been found to render the acquisition of one of the most difficult parts of English Grammar exciting and interesting, and therefore easy.

(5.) For the use of those Teachers who may prefer it, the old terminology of the Verb has been inserted in brackets in the Conjugation.

It may be suggested that the whole section on the Formation and Derivation of Words had better be left till the rest of the book has been gone through.

The Pupils should be made to read the Explanations and Observations, and thoroughly to master them, so as to be able to answer any questions upon them. It might perhaps be as well if those parts were sometimes read aloud in class, and commented on by the teacher.

CONTENTS.

PART I.—ETYMOLOGY.

SECT. I.—*Inflection or Declension of Words.*

	PAGE
Parts of Speech—Articles	10
Nouns—Number: Singular; Plural	11
Cases	14
Genders	16
Adjectives and their Degrees	18
Irregular Comparatives and Superlatives	19
Pronouns—The three Persons	20
Personal Pronouns	21
CAUTION. <i>Yours</i> , not <i>your's</i>	21
Relative Pronouns	22
Adjective Pronouns	24
Numerals	27
Verbs: Sorts of Verbs	28
Moods	30
Tenses	31
Numbers and Persons	33
Auxiliary Verbs	34
Conjugation of Regular Verb, <i>Praise</i>	36
Regular and Irregular (Weak and Strong) Verbs	46
First (or A) Conjugation of Strong Verbs	48
Second (or E)	49
Third (or I)	50
Fourth (or O), Fifth (or U)	51
Contracted Verbs	52
Mixed Verbs	53
Participle Indefinite	54
Adverbs	56
Prepositions	58
Conjunctions	59
Interjections	60

SECT. II.—*Formation or Derivation of Words.*

Roots and Derivatives	60
Primary Derivatives	60
Secondary Derivatives—Pure English Affixes	64

	PAGE
Pure English Prefixes	74
Compounds	75
Latin Affixes	76
Greek Affixes	78
Latin Prefixes	79
Greek Prefixes	80
Derivatives from Anglo-Saxon	81
Derivatives from Latin	84
Derivatives from Greek	96

PART II.—SYNTAX.

What a Sentence is, &c.	100
RULE 1. Nominative Case	104
RULE 2. Objective Case	111
CAUTION. <i>As</i>	112
RULE 3. Possessive Case	113
RULE 4. Apposition	116
RULE 5. Verbal Nouns	118
RULE 6. Pronouns	120
RULE 7. Adjectives	128
RULE 8. Articles	134
RULE 9. Adverbs	140
CAUTION. Adjectives as Adverbs	143
RULE 10. Neuter Verbs	144
CAUTION. Cognate Active and Neuter Verbs	144
RULE 11. Preposition Verbs	145
RULE 12. Subjunctive Mood	146
RULE 13. Imperative Mood	148
RULE 14. Infinitive Mood	148
CAUTION. <i>For</i> before the Infinitive	150
RULE 15. Corresponding Tenses	151
RULE 16. Verbs of the same form	152
RULE 17. Auxiliaries of the Future	152
RULE 18. Participle Absolute	153
CAUTION. Past Participle and Past Tense	153
RULE 19. Prepositions	154
CAUTION. <i>Different</i>	154
RULE 20. Conjunctions	158
CAUTION. <i>As</i> for <i>that</i>	158
RULE 21. Interjections	159
Forms of Parsing	160
Table of the Verb	162

ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

1. GRAMMAR is the science of words.

2. Words are composed of letters.

3. In the English language there are twenty-six letters. The letters all together are called the Alphabet. They are these—*a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, w, x, y, z.*

4. These letters are vowels or consonants.


The vowels are five ; *a, e, i, o, u.*

The consonants are twenty-one ; *b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, w, x, y, z.*

OBSERVATION. Under the consonants are included *w* and *y*, when they begin a syllable. Elsewhere they are vowels. Vowels sounded together are called a diphthong, as *ou* in *sound*, *ai* in *rain*, *ee* in *glee*.

Writing words correctly is called ORTHOGRAPHY.

EXERCISE I.

 (a) Write down the following words, and draw your pencil through the vowels, and underline the consonants :—

Hope, Threshold, Column, Business, Home, Think, Man, Manners, Rule, Send, Have, Into, Come, Will, War, Yes.

(b) Draw your pencil through the diphthongs :—

Cow, House, Guess, Boy, Toyman, Buy, Sleeper, Three, Claim, Fair, Fountain, Point, East, Boot, Distinguish, Way.

5. Grammar is divided into two parts, Etymology and Syntax.

6. Etymology treats of words by themselves ; Syntax treats of words connected into sentences.

PART I.

ETYMOLOGY.

7. Etymology is divided into two branches. The first treats of the various kinds of words, with their *inflection* or *declension*. The second treats of the *formation* or *derivation* of words.

SECT. I.—THE INFLECTION OF WORDS.

8. There are nine PARTS OF SPEECH, or sorts of words; Article, Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb, Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, Interjection.


ARTICLES.

9. An Article is a word prefixed to a Noun, to mark the extent of its signification.

There are two Articles.—1. The Definite Article, *the*; as, *the man, the dog*. 2. The Indefinite Article, *an*; as, *an apple, an oak*.

10. When the word *an* comes before a consonant, the *n* is dropt, and only *a* remains; as, *a pear*, not *an pear*. *An*, or *a*, means *one*.


EXERCISE II.

 Write out the following words in two lists, one with the Definite, one with the Indefinite Article:—

Oar, Cow, Inn, Upstart, Age, Eye, Mouth, Coat, Ant, Ox, Waistcoat, Shoe, Ear, Boot, Sleeve, Day, Life, Eel, Pig, Ape.

11. The Indefinite Article *an* loses its *n* before *h*, when sounded, but not when mute. Thus we say, *a house*, not *an house*. So also before *y*; and *u*, when pronounced long, as if with a *y* before it; as, *a youth*, not *an youth*; *a unit*, rather than *an unit*.

EXERCISE III.

 Prefix the Indefinite Article to the following words:—
University, Union, Year, Hotel, Hostler, Yard, Herb, Hero, Heroine, Hoof, Umpire, Honour, Hour, Heir, Hair.


NOUNS.

12. Nouns are names of persons, animals, places, or things; as, *man, cow, town, box*. The word *noun* means *name*.

13. Names of persons, animals, places, or things, by which they are distinguished from others of the same class, are called Nouns Proper, or Proper Names; as, *James, Oxford*.

14. Nouns, not Proper, are called Common.

EXERCISE IV.

 Write out the following sentences, and underline all the Nouns, also writing (P) over the Proper Names:—

The father sent John into the garden. The boys are in school. Where are the girls? In the house. Where is George? In the park. Have you read this book? Where are your grammars? In my pocket. In my box. It is on the table. Where is Samuel? He is living at Tunbridge. Have you ever seen Snowdon? Only once, in very bad weather. Is your brother in London? No, he is at Liverpool. The boats were sunk in the river Thames. The gardener cut down the tree. My cousin lives at Paris.


To Nouns belong Number, Case, and Gender.

NUMBERS.

15. There are two Numbers, Singular and Plural. The Singular is used in speaking of *one*; the Plural, in speaking of *more than one*.

16. The SINGULAR Number is the Noun in its simple form; as, *horse, cow, table, book*.

EXERCISE V.

 Write out the preceding Exercise, and underline all the Singular Nouns:—

17. The PLURAL Number is formed from the Singular. There are three ways of forming it.

18. FIRST WAY.—The Plural is formed by adding *s*; as, *book, books*; or, where the pronunciation requires it, *es*; as, *fox, foxes*.

Obs.—Nouns ending in *o*, preceded by a consonant, generally take *es*; as, *hero, heroes*.

EXERCISE VI.


 Write out the Plurals of the following Nouns:—

Boat, Camp, Table, Brooch, Crutch, Boot, Board, Box, Bedstead, Horse, Ditch, Coach, Chair, Hero, Grotto, Desk.

RULE 1.—Nouns ending in *y*, preceded by a CONSONANT, change the *y* into *ie* in the Plural; as, *lady, ladies*. But if the *y* is preceded by a VOWEL, the *y* is not changed in the Plural; as *boy, boys*.

RULE 2.—Nouns ending in *f* or *fe* change the *f* into *v* in the Plural; as, *calv, calves; life, lives*: EXCEPT *brief, chief, grief, handkerchief; hoof, proof, roof; scarf, wharf, dwarf; turf, gulf; wife, strife, safe* Nouns in *ff* do not take *v*; as, *stuff, stuffs*: EXCEPT *staff*, which has the Plural *staves*.

EXERCISE VII.

 Write out the Plurals of the following Nouns:—

Bay, Galley, Quality, Hoof, Proof, Loaf, Toy, Half, Cuff, Quantity, Donkey, Party, Moiety, Cliff, Wife, Muff, Fly.

19. SECOND WAY.—The Plural is also formed by adding *en*; as, *ox, oxen*.

20. Obs. 1.—In *brother, brethren*, the vowel is changed also; *en* is added, and *o* becomes *e*.

21. Obs. 2.—The Plural of *child* is *children*. *Children* is the only Plural in *ren* now remaining. Formerly there were more. Wiclif wrote *lambren* as Plural of *lamb*.

22. Obs. 3.—*Svine* is a softened form of *sowen*, the plural of *sow*; and *kine*, of *cow-en*, the plural of *cow*.—The plurals in *en* were once very numerous, and the words *eyen, housen, &c.*, were used as we use *eyes, houses, &c.* Many such words are still used in Scotland, and some parts of England.

23. THIRD WAY.—The Plural is also made by changing the vowel ; as, *man*, *men*.

Obs.—In *woman*, *women*, two vowels are in fact changed ; for the *o* is pronounced differently.

24. RULE.—*A* is changed to *e* ; *oo* to *ee* ; *ou* to *i*.—*Man*, *woman*, *foot*, *tooth*, *goose*, *mouse*, *louse*, are made Plural so.


25. Obs. 1.—The *c* in *lice* and *mice* represents the *s* in the singular, *louse* and *mouse*. The plural sign is the change of the vowel (*ou* to *i*) ; the *s*-sound is part of the root. (178. Obs. 5.)

26. Obs. 2.—In *pence* and *dice* the *c* represents the plural *s* in *pennies* and *dies*, which are the regular plurals. (178. Obs. 5.)

27. Obs. 3.—Some words have the plural in two forms ; as *pennies*, *pence* ; *dies*, *dice* ; *brothers*, *brethren*. Then they are differently used ; *pennies*, for penny-pieces separately, as coins ; *pence*, when spoken of together as money : *dies*, for coining ; *dice*, for gaming. *Brothers*, is applied to those of a family ; *brethren*, generally to those of a society or other body.

28. Obs. 4.—Some words have the Plural the same as the Singular ; as, *sheep*, *deer*. So *fish*, *cod*, *salmon*, &c., are used.

EXERCISE VIII.

 Write out the Plurals of the following Nouns :—

Man, Foot, Child, Ox, Brother, Goose, Mouse, Tooth, Louse, Penny, Sow, Woman, Die.

29. Nouns purely Latin, Greek, French, &c., generally retain their original plurals.

Addendum	Addenda	Datum	Data	Medium	Media
Amanuensis	Amanuenses	Desideratum	Desiderata	Memorandum	Memoranda
Analysis	Analyses	Dictum	Dicta	Metamorphosis	Metamorphoses
Animalculum	Animalcula	Effluvium	Effluvia	Miasma	Miasmata
Antithesis	Antitheses	Ellipsis	Ellipses	Monsieur	Messieurs
Apex	Apices	Erratum	Errata	Nebula	Nebulae
Appendix	Appendices	Focus	Foci	Oasis	Oases
Arcanum	Arcana	Formula	Formulae	Parenthesis	Parentheses
Automaton	Automata	Genus	Genera	Phasis	Phases
Axis	Axes	Genius	Geniuses	Phenomenon	Phenomena
Bandit	Banditti	Genius (man of)	Genii	Radius	Radii
Base	Bases	Genius (a spirit)		Seraph	Seraphim
Beau	Beaux	Hypothesis	Hypotheses	Stimulus	Stimuli
Calx	Calces	Ignis Fatuus	Ignes Fatui	Stratum	Strata
Cherub	Cherubim	Index	Indices	Vertex	Vertices
Conversation	Conversations	Lamina	Laminae	Vortex	Vortices
Crisis	Crises	Larva	Larvae	Virtuoso	Virtuosi
Criterion	Criteria	Magus	Magi		


CASES.

30. There are three Cases : the Nominative, the Possessive, and the Objective.

31. In Nouns the Nominative and Objective agree in form. They differ only in use.

32. The Singular Possessive is made by adding *s* with an apostrophe (*'s*) ; as, *man, man's*.


EXERCISE IX.

 Write out the Cases of the Nouns in Ex. VI., thus :—
Singular. Nom. Book. Poss. Book's. Obj. Book.

33. The Plural Possessive is made like the Singular, by adding *s* with an apostrophe to the Plural Nominative ; as, *men, men's*.


34. But when the Plural ends in *s*, the Possessive *s* is omitted, and only the apostrophe remains ; as, *horses' teeth*, that is, *the teeth of horses*.

EXERCISE X.

 Write the Plural of Nouns in Ex. VI. like the Sing :—

35. *Obs.*—In the Singular also, when a word ends in *es*, the *e* being sounded, the possessive *s* is sometimes omitted ; but the apostrophe (*'*) is kept to show that there should be an *s*. Thus we say, *Moses' writings*. We may also say, *Moses's writings*. On the contrary, we do not say, *James' book* ; but always *James's book*, because the *e* in *James* is not sounded. Again, if the word ends in *s*, *ce*, or even *x*, the possessive *s* is often not added. Thus we say, *for quietness' sake*, *Felix' room*. But this chiefly occurs in phrases with *sake* ; for we say, *the duchess's carriage*, &c., and do not omit the *s*.

EXERCISE XI.

 Put the following phrases into the Possessive form :—

The books of Moses. The wife of Phinehas. The wife of James. The house of Mr. Jacob. The house of Mr. Jacobs. For the sake of conscience. The gardens of Mr. Loddiges. The church of St. Stephen. The beauty of the Jewess. For the sake of peace. The carriage of the Empress.

THE CASES EXPLAINED.

NOMINATIVE.

36. The Nominative answers the question *who* or *what*.

(1.) *The boy broke the window. Who broke the window?*
The boy broke the window. Boy is in the Nominative.

(2.) *The dog was sagacious. What was sagacious? The dog was sagacious. Dog* is in the Nominative.

The Nominative, then, is the Case of the **WHO** or **WHAT**.

OBJECTIVE.

37. The Objective answers the question *whom* or *what*.

(1.) *The boy struck the girl. Whom did the boy strike?*
The boy struck the girl. Girl is in the Objective.

(2.) *The boy struck the window. What did the boy strike?*
The boy struck the window. Window is in the Objective.

The Objective, then, is the Case of the **WHOM** or **WHAT**.

POSSESSIVE.

38. The Possessive answers the question *whose* or *of what*.

(1.) *He killed William's dog. Whose dog did he kill? He killed William's dog. William's* is in the Possessive.

(2.) *The horse's foot is hurt. The foot of what is hurt?*
The horse's foot is hurt. Horse's is in the Possessive.

The Possessive, then, is the Case of the **WHOSE** or **OF WHAT**.

39. The following sentence shows the three Cases:—

James broke the cobbler's window.

<i>Nominative.</i>	Who broke it?	<i>James.</i>
<i>Objective.</i>	Broke what?	<i>The window.</i>
<i>Possessive.</i>	Whose window?	<i>The cobbler's.</i>

EXERCISE XII.

 Underline all the Nominatives, doubly underline the Objectives, and enclose the Possessives in brackets:—

The dog guards the house. The master teaches the boy. The horse's hoof is hard. The boy respects his master. God's goodness is great. The shepherd watches the sheep. The raven's wings are black. The father protects the children. Wellington's victories cannot be forgotten. The boys' books are here. The cat scratches the girl. The girl drowns the cat. The fire burns down the house. The house contains treasures. The owner loses the treasures. Where are the girls' bonnets? The bat has wings. Bees make honey.

GENDERS.

40. There are two Genders, the Masculine, and the Feminine.

41. The Masculine denotes the *he* ; the Feminine denotes the *she* ; as *man*, Masculine ; *woman*, Feminine.


42. Names of things without life are of no Gender, and are therefore called Neuter Nouns ; as *table*, *pen*.

EXPL.—NEUTER means *neither of two* ; and, as applied to Nouns, means neither Masculine nor Feminine.

43. OBS.—Many things without life, as *sun*, *ship*, &c., are often spoken of as Masculine, or as Feminine, respectively. Thus, the *sun* is spoken of as Masculine, and the word *he* is used in reference to it ; while the *moon* is spoken of as Feminine, and the word *she* is used in reference to it. So *the church*, the virtues, *faith*, *hope*, *charity* ; ships ; countries, as *England*, *France*, *Russia*, &c., are spoken of as Feminine.

44. Some Nouns are Common to both genders, being either Masculine or Feminine ; as *parent*, *teacher*, *friend*, *enemy*, *ally*, *bird*.

EXERCISE XIII.

 Write down the following words, and put M over the Masculines, F over the Feminines, N over the Neuters, and C over the Commons :—

The boy. The author. The girl. The daughter. The garden. The aunt. The gander. Sir. The cow. The lad. The bachelor. The spinster. The nephew. The hay. The bird. The dog. The woman. The mistress. The son. The master. The cart. The niece. The book. The lord. The horse. The milk. The countess. The earl. The mare. The grass. The bull. The lass. Person. The ink. The friend. A duke. An enemy. A writing-desk. A university. An army. Madam. The rain. The town Brighton. A negro. A Turk. The queen Victoria.

FORMATION OF FEMININES

45. The Feminine is distinguished from the Masculine :

46. (1.) By another word ; as *uncle*, *aunt*.

47. (2.) By a termination, *ess*, or *ine*.

48. By the termination *ess* ; as *count*, *countess*.

Obs.—If the Masculine ends in *er* or *or*, the *er* or *or* is sometimes omitted, and the *ess* added in its place ; as *governor*, *governess*.

But more generally the *r* is kept, and only the vowel lost ; as *songster*, *songst(e)ress* ; *actor*, *act(o)ress*.

49. By the termination *ine* ; as *hero*, *heroine* ; *landgrave*, *landgrav-ine*.

50. (3.) By prefixing a different word ; as *he-goat*, *she-goat* ; *man-servant*, *maid-servant* ; *cock-sparrow*, *hen-sparrow*.

51. Obs.—There are also some Latin Feminines in *trix*, from Masculines in *tor* ; as *executrix*, from *executor*.

52. LIST OF MASCULINES AND FEMININES.

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
Abbot	Abbess	Duke	Duchess	Marquis	Marchioness
Actor	Actress	Dog	Bitch	Master	Mistress
Adulterer	Adulteress	Deacon	Deaconess	Mayor	Mayoress
Ambassador	Ambassadress	Drake	Duck	Nephew	Niece
Administra- tor.	Administra- trix	Earl	Countess	Patron	Patroness
Author	Authoress	Elector	Electress	Peer	Peeress
Baron	Baroness	Executor	Executrix	Poet	Poetess
Bachelor	Maid, Spin- ster	Emperor	Empress	Priest	Priestess
		Father	Mother	Prince	Princess
		Friar	Nun	Prophet	Prophetess
		Gander	Goose	Ram	Ewe
Beau	Belle	Husband	Wife	Son	Daughter
Boar	Sow	Horse	Mare	Sorcerer	Sorceress
Boy	Girl	Heir	Heiress	Stag	Hind
Bridegroom	Bride	Hunter	Huntress	Shepherd	Shepherdess
Brother	Sister	Jew	Jewess	Tutor	Tutress
Buck	Doe	King	Queen	Viscount	Viscountess
Bull	Cow	Lad	Lass	Uncle	Aunt
Bullock	Heifer	Lion	Lioness	Widower	Widow
Cock	Hen	Lord	Lady	Wizard	Witch
Count, Earl, Countess		Man	Woman		

ADJECTIVES.

53. An Adjective is a word which expresses the *quality* of a noun ; as, *great, good, large*.

54. EXPLANATION.—An Adjective has no meaning alone ; it goes with some noun ; as *a good house*. Here *good* is an Adjective, because it shews the quality of the noun *house*.

EXERCISE XIV.

 (a) Underline all the Adjectives :—

The strong man works. The sharp knife cuts. The watchful dog barks. The ripe fruit is plucked. The good seed is sown. The new clock is striking. A brave soldier fights. Modesty is a great virtue. Rain is beneficial. A large garden is not always a profitable garden. A handsome flower is not always a sweet-smelling flower. A swift horse is very useful.

(b) Prefix a suitable Adjective to each of these Nouns :—

Dog, Cat, Pig, Goat, Horse, Table, Book, Cow, Apple, Sea, Grass, Ink, Pen, Ox, Fruit, Bees, Ball, Game, Bull.

55. Adjectives have three Degrees, the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative.

56. The Positive Degree is the Adjective in its simple form ; as, *high, low*.

57. The Comparative is formed by adding *er* to the Positive ; as, *high, higher ; low, lower*.

58. The Superlative is formed by adding *est* to the Positive ; as, *high, highest ; low, lowest*.

59. RULE 1.—If the Positive ends in *e*, the *e* is dropt in the Comparative and Superlative ; as, *wide, wid-er, wid-est*.


RULE 2.—If the Positive ends in *y*, preceded by a consonant, the *y* becomes *i* in the Comparative and Superlative ; as, *happy, happi-er, happi-est*. But if the *y* is preceded by a vowel, the *y* is kept ; as, *gay, gayer, gayest*.

RULE 3.—If the word ends in a SINGLE consonant, preceded by a SINGLE vowel, the consonant is doubled ; as, *red, redder, reddest*. But if a word has two consonants at the end, or two vowels before the one consonant, no doubling takes place as, *thick, thicker, thickest ; weak, weaker, weakest*.

DEGREES OF ADJECTIVES EXPLAINED.

60. The Positive Degree asserts a quality of any thing *positively*, without any restriction or reference to another thing. Thus, the sentence, *The tree is high*, asserts positively the *height* of the tree, without reference to any other trees. But we may also assert the height of a tree in comparison with some other tree or trees, or with something else. We may say, *The apple tree is higher than the cherry tree*, or, *The apple tree is the highest of all the trees*.—These two forms, *higher* and *highest*, are, strictly, degrees of *Comparison*, called, the one the Comparative, and the other the Superlative.

EXERCISE XV.

 Underline all the Comparatives; doubly underline the Superlatives :—

Iron is hard, steel harder. Tin is heavy, gold heavier. Gold is the heaviest of the precious metals. Glass is clearer than horn. Sight is the noblest of the senses. The movement of light is quicker than that of sound. The Rhine is a larger river than the Moselle. Croesus was one of the richest of men. Solomon was the wisest of men. The cherries are riper than the currants. Of all stones the diamond is the hardest.

61. Most Adjectives of more than one syllable are compared by prefixing *more* and *most*; as *useful, more useful, most useful*.


62. Obs. 1.—In the same way *less* and *least* are used.

Obs. 2.—The following Superlatives are formed by *most* added to the Positive or Comparative: *hindmost, hindermost; utmost, uttermost, from out; upmost, uppermost; inmost, innermost*.

63. Many common Adjectives are compared irregularly.

Bad	Worse	Worst	Late	Later, latter	Latest, last
Far	Farther, fur- ther	Farthest, furthest	Little	Less, lesser	Least
Fore	Former	Foremost	Many, much	More	Most
Good	Better	Best	Nigh	Nigher	Next
			Old	Older, elder	Oldest, eldest

EXERCISE XVI.

 Write the three Degrees of all the Adjectives in Exercises XIV. and XV. :—

PRONOUNS.

64. A Pronoun is a word used *instead* of a Noun; as, *James was tired, and he sat down.*

EXPL.—Here *he* is a Pronoun, being used instead of the Noun *James*. Instead of saying “James was tired, and *James* sat down,” we say, “James was tired, and *he* sat down.”

EXERCISE XVII.

 (a) Underline all the Pronouns:—

I am fond of work. We reverence old age. You learn diligently. He is clever. She walks well. They are very silent. You must not associate with bad people. We get on by perseverance. We are very fond of her, for she is very diligent. If a child is disobedient he is punished. Thou art hungry, but I am thirsty. The heat makes me thirsty. The porter admitted us. The officer praised the soldier, and rewarded him.

(b) Put the proper Pronoun, instead of the Noun which is repeated:—

If the boy is good, the boy is loved. If the child is not obedient, the child is punished. (*James speaking,*) James said to his mother yesterday, James will always love you. (*Anne speaking,*) Anne called out, Anne cannot come now. The servants came and told the master that the servants had done as the master had ordered. (*Speaking to Edward,*) When Edward comes out of school, Edward must go into the garden.

65. Pronouns are of the first, second, or third person.


The person *speaking* is the *first* person.

The person *spoken to* is the *second*.

The person or thing *spoken of* is the *third*.

EXPL.—Thus, in the sentence, *I assure you that he is coming; I* is the first person, being the *speaker*; *you* the second, being *spoken to*; *he* the third, being *spoken of*.

EXERCISE XVIII.

 Write out the sentences of the preceding Exercise, and put over the Pronouns of the first person (P. I.); over those of the second (P. II.); over those of the third (P. III.).

66. Pronouns are of three kinds, Personal, Relative, and Adjective.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

67. A Personal Pronoun is the simple substitute for a Noun; as, *Where is Robert's book? He has lost it.*


EXPL.—Here *he* and *it* simply stand for *Robert* and the *book*. No other relation is implied.

Cases.	Singular.					Plural.			
	1 PER.	2 PER.	3 PER.			1 PER.	2 PER.	3 PER.	
			Mas.	Fem.	Neu.				
NOM.	I	Thou	He	She	It	We	Ye	You	They
POSS.	Mine	Thine	His	Hers	Its	Ours	Yours	Theirs	
OBJ.	Me	Thee	Him	Her	It	Us	You	Them	

68. OBS.—These Pronouns in the Possessive are considered as Personal Pronouns only when they include the Noun within themselves; as, *That is his*. If they are followed by a Noun, they are Adjective Pronouns (77); as, *That is his box*.

CAUTION.—Never use the apostrophe with *his*, *hers*, *its*, *ours*, *yours*, *theirs*. Write *yours*, not *your's*.

EXERCISE XIX.

 Underline the Pronouns, and put over each the Person, Number, Case, and Gender:—

Thus, I. S. Obj. C.
Me.

III. S. Obj. F.
Her.

Follow me. Do as I tell you. You must not forget the books; bring them with you. He promises to come to-morrow. He often helped me. We shall be able to render him material assistance. She loves them much. He was punished yesterday. Whose book is that? Mine. Whose hat is this? His. Don't hurt her. The dog seems in pain; look at it. Thou oughtest to return kindness by kindness. He told them that he would carry John's books, but not theirs. Is that bat yours? No, it is James's. Caesar not only fought battles; he wrote an account of them too.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

69. A Relative Pronoun relates to some Noun or Pronoun going before it, called its Antecedent; as, *I have lost the book which I bought.*

EXPL.—Here *which* is a Relative, because it relates to the Noun *book* going before it. *Book* is the Antecedent.

Cases.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
NOM.	Who	Which
POSS.	Whose (= Who's)	
OBJ.	Whom	Which

70. So the compounds *whoever*, *whosoever*.


Cases	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
NOM.	Whoever	Whosoever
POSS.	Whosoever	
OBJ.	Whomsoever	Whichsoever

Obs. 1.—*Whoso* is used only in the Nominative.

Obs. 2.—The Relatives are the same in both Numbers.

71 *Who* is used only of persons; as, *The man who reads.* *Which* is used of things or inferior animals; as, *The table which fell; The dog which barks.*

EXERCISE XX.


 Underline the Relatives; doubly underline the Antecedents:—

The man who bound that book must be a clever workman. Whoever breaks this rule will be punished accordingly. The carpenter whom we employ is quite a man of genius. That is a fine horse whosoever it may be. I wonder whose plan it was. The person whom you saw riding in the park, I met yesterday. The tailor who made that coat is no ordinary artist. I will give the prize to whomsoever it is due. Is this the book which I saw in your hands yesterday? Whoso has abused power, clings to it with a yet more convulsive grasp. He may take whichever he prefers. Whomsoever he recommends will be sure of the situation. Whoever distinguishes himself most will get the prize. The man, who said so, is a wise man.

72. *That* is sometimes a Relative, and is used for *who* or *which*; as, *The house that you saw is sold.*

EXPL.—Here we might say *which* instead of *that*.

EXERCISE XXI.

 (*) Instead of *who* or *which*, put the Relative *that*:—


The man who made your dining-table is making me a set of chairs. The strawberries which you gave me were excellent. Where is the hat which you bought to-day? I have not yet seen the house which I bought. I bought it from the account which a friend gave me. He was a man whom I could rely on. It is very imprudent to buy things which you have not seen.

(b) Instead of *that*, put the equivalent, *who*, *whom*, or *which*:—

The persons that refuse to obey the law are rebels. He that reproveth a scorner getteth to himself shame. The horse that my father has bought is four years old. The servant that we have hired is a Frenchwoman. Where is the book that I lent you? The pen that I am writing with is the same that you gave me. The lady that he married is very intelligent.

73. *What* is at once both Antecedent and Relative, and is equivalent to *that which* or *those which*; as, *Tell me what you did.*

EXERCISE XXII.

 (*) Instead of *what*, put the Antecedent and Relative:—

He told me what he had seen. We commonly love what has done us good. Let them say what they will, she will do what she will. I will do what I can. Don't forget to tell him what I say. Do you see what I mean? Have you forgotten what your father said? Is this what you mean?

(b) Put *what*, where it can supply the place of the Relative and its Antecedent:—

Write me an account of *the things which* you see. I told him that which you told me. He often tells me that which he expects. We endeavour to do that which is fair. This is just that which I wanted. Put that which is lying on the table into the cupboard. He sent me *those things which* he promised.

ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

74. An Adjective Pronoun is a word which partakes of the character of an Adjective and of a Pronoun ; as, *His book is lost.*

75. EXPL.—Here, *his* is an Adjective, agreeing with *book* ; but it is also a *Pronoun*, for it stands in place of James's or Charles's, or some other person's. (68.)

Obs.—Adjective Pronouns are also sometimes called *Pro-nominal Adjectives*.

76. Adjective Pronouns are of five kinds ; Possessive, Demonstrative, Distributive, Indefinite, Interrogative.


77. The POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS are—

1st PERS.	Sing. My	Plur. Our
2d PERS.	Thy	Your
3d PERS.	His, her, its	Their

78. Obs. 1.—The Adjective *own* is used with any of these Possessive Pronouns ; as, *my own son, thy own father.*

79. Obs. 2.—The word *self* is sometimes added to these Possessive Pronouns ; as, *myself, ourselves.* *Self*, however, is not added to *his* and *their*, but to the Personals *him* and *them* ; as, *himself, themselves.* These are called *Reciprocal Pronouns*.

EXERCISE XXIII.


 Underline the Possessive Pronouns ; mark over them the Person ; doubly underline the Reciprocals :—

Where is my hat ? The boy has hurt himself. What have you done with your boots ? I have sold my horse myself. Who is your shoemaker ? He did it himself. Where does thy brother live ? Do you know her sister ? Their brother lives near our house. How are your beans this year ? They came themselves. That is a fine tree, but its bark is a good deal injured. Have you ever been at his uncle's ? I dined there with your brother and his wife. Whose hat is that ? Your own, is it not ? He asked me whose hat that was, and it is his own all the while. Physician, heal thyself. I myself saw it. Do it yourself.

80. The DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS are, SING. *This, that.* PLUR. *These, those.*

81. RULE.—If *that* can be changed into *who, whom, or which*, it is a Relative; as, *The house THAT you saw is sold.* When *that* marks anything emphatically, it is a Demonstrative; as, *Give me THAT.* It is pronounced sharp, *thát.*

EXERCISE XXIV.

 (a) Write out the following sentences; underline the Demonstratives, and doubly underline the Relatives:—

The man that you sent this morning is not come back. I admire that house. Is that a new book? Which? That. That is a new edition of the book. The boy that came into that class last will soon be first. I mean that boy. That is a fine horse. Where is that knife you had? Who said that?

Some place their bliss in action, some in ease;
Those call it pleasure, and contentment these.

(b) Put the Demonstrative for the word *the*, where you can:—

The boy who translated this has done it well. Who is that lady? Which, the lady at the window? No, the one who is walking across the street. She is the mother of the young lady whom you met in France last year, at the party you told me of. The persons who will not sow must not expect to reap.

82. The DISTRIBUTIVE PRONOUNS are *each, every, either, neither.*

83. OBS. 1.—*Each* and *every* are Distributives of ANY Number, of three, or three hundred. But *either* and *neither* are Distributives of two only. We may say *either, or neither, of these plans*, provided there are *only two*, but not if there are more than two.

84. OBS. 2.—*Neither* is equivalent to *not either.* (196-8.)

EXERCISE XXV.

 Underline the Distributives:—

Each of us must take a candle. Neither of you ought to go. Every one of you must go. Which of us shall go? Either. Either of you may write out the list. Every part of Italy is cultivated like a garden. Neither of the twins was there. Every rose has a thorn. Each boy is to have his book.

85. The INDEFINITE PRONOUNS are *All, Any, Both, Certain, Few, Many, Much, None, One, Other, Another, One another, Each other, Several, Some, Such, Whole.*

86. OBS.—These words are likewise used as Adjectives; as *all men, both houses.* When used with Nouns, they are Adjectives; when without, they are Pronouns. Sometimes the Adjective and Noun are written in one word; as *something*; so *nobody*; where, strictly, *no* is an Adjective, and *body* a Noun. Commonly, these compounds are regarded as Nouns merely.

EXERCISE XXVI.

 Underline the Indefinite Pronouns; doubly underline the Compounds; when Adjectives, enclose them in brackets:—

They were amusing one another. I have not been on any of the railroads. Have you seen any one? These pens are worth nothing. I have not seen such fine strawberries for many years. Will you take a few? They were opposed to each other. All agreed. There were certain present who told him about it. Many were there. Has he brought anything? Nothing at all. The one became a soldier, the other went to the bar. Several of the boys went. One does not like to have one's favours slighted.


87. OBS.—Other Numerals besides *one*, both cardinal and ordinal, are used as Indefinite Pronouns (92, 94), that is, without Nouns; as *eight came*; *the first is arrived.*

88. The INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS are *who, whose, whom, which, what.*

89. Interrogatives are used in asking questions.

90. OBS.—A question is either direct or indirect; direct, as *who did it?* indirect, as *he asked me who did it?*

EXERCISE XXVII.

 Underline the Interrogatives:—

(Direct.) Who broke that glass? Which of you did it? What were you saying? Whose cap is this? Whom did you send?

(Indirect.) He asked me which tree I meant? Did you inquire who he was? I asked whose that book was?

NUMERALS.

91. Numerals, or Numeral Adjectives, are of two kinds, Cardinals or Ordinals.

92. The Cardinal Numbers are—

(a) One, Two, Three, Four, Five, Six, Seven, Eight, Nine, Ten, Eleven, Twelve.

(b) Thirteen (=three-ten), Fourteen (=four-ten), &c.

(c) Twenty (=twain-ty), Thirty (=three-ty), &c.

(d) Hundred, Thousand, Million.

93. Obs.—The first class (a) are the simple numbers; the next (b) are compounded with *ten*, by way of addition; the next (c) are compounded with *ty*, which means *ten*, by way of multiplication.

94. The Ordinal Numbers denote the *order* in which anything comes. They are,

(a) First, Second, Third.

(b) Fourth, Fifth, Sixth, Seventh, Eighth, Ninth, &c.

(c) Twenti-eth, Thirti-eth, Forti-eth, Fifti-eth, &c.

(d) Hundredth, Thousandth, Millionth.

95. Obs.—The first three (a) are irregular; the next (b) are made by the addition of *th* to the Cardinal; the next (c) have *eth* added, and the *y* becoming *i*, not *twentyth*, but *twentieth*; the next (d) are like the second, simply having *th* added to the Cardinal.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

 Put over the Numerals C for Cardinal, O for Ordinal:—

I was there four days. He will return on the twentieth of the month. Have you been many days in London? Only three. There are sixty minutes in one hour. In which class is he, in the sixth? I counted a hundred and sixty cherries on that tree. Which tree? The third from here. On what day did he leave? Three days ago. There were twelve Apostles. January is the first, and February the second month. A Prussian dollar is equal to three shillings. About the end of the fifteenth century Columbus discovered America. There are ten commandments. A week has seven days.

VERBS.

96. A Verb is a word which denotes *being* or *doing*; as, *The boy beats his brother*; *The boy is beaten by his brother*; *The boy sleeps*.

EXPL.—*Beats*, in the first sentence, implies an action *done by* the boy; *is beaten*, in the second, implies an action *done to* the boy by the brother; and *sleeps*, in the third, implies a state or condition of *being*. These words, then, *beats*, *is-beaten*, and *sleeps*, are Verbs.

EXERCISE XXIX.

 Underline the Verbs :—

The water boils. The grass is green. The stars shine. Horses run, birds fly, serpents creep, fishes swim. The weather is warm. The day was fine. The boy struck the dog. The dog ran up to him. The boy knew his father. The mother loves her children. Children obey their parents. Give me the book. Your hat lies on the table. Who laid it there? I do not know; but I saw it lying there. The gardener prunes the vine. Who is mowing the grass? They make hay while the sun shines. The grass was scorched by the sun. The book is bound. Who wrote this letter? It is well done.

97. Verbs are Active, Passive, or Neuter.

98. An ACTIVE Verb expresses an action that must have an agent and an object; as, *I praise James*.

EXPL.—Here *praise* is an Active Verb, having a person praising (*I*), and a person praised (*James*). The agent, that is, the doer, is *I*; the object, that is, the person acted on, is *James*.

99. A PASSIVE Verb expresses an action *done to* a person or thing, and must have an object and an agent; as, *James is praised by me*.

EXPL.—Here *is praised* is a Passive Verb, having an object *who* is praised (*James*), and an agent *by whom* he is praised (*me*). (135.) The action of praising is *done to* James.

100. OBS.—The Verb, in its active state, is called the ACTIVE VOICE; and in its passive, the PASSIVE VOICE.

101. A NEUTER Verb expresses the *being* or state of being of something, or an action not passing over to an object ; as, *I sleep, he runs.*


EXPL.—Here *sleep* and *runs* are Neuter Verbs, having no object after them. Neuter means neither of two ; and, as applied to Verbs, means neither Active nor Passive.

102. OBS. 1.—Active Verbs are called TRANSITIVE, because the action *passes over* to some *object*, and does not terminate with the agent ; as *James praises his brother.* Here the action of *praising* passes over to the object, *brother*, and hence the Verb is called Transitive. Neuter Verbs are called INTRANSITIVE, because the action does not pass over to an object, but terminates with the agent ; as, *You walk ; They awake.*

103. OBS. 2.—Neuter Verbs sometimes take a Noun after them, not as an object, but rather as explaining and completing the meaning of the Verb ; as, *He ran a race ; Go thy way.* (355.)

104. OBS. 3.—Many Verbs are used both as Active and as Neuter Verbs ; the context only determining *which* they are : as, *to grieve* ; a person himself grieves, or he may grieve another ; that is, cause another to grieve. We may say, *He grieved his friend*, where the Verb is Active ; or, *He grieves for his friend*, where the Verb is Neuter.

EXERCISE XXX.

 Make three divisions. Put the right Verbs under each respectively, in the following sentences, and in Ex. xxxiii. :—

Active.

Neuter.

Passive.

The tree waves. The moon enlightens the earth. The tree is blown about by the wind. The cow lows. The stars glitter. The physician cures the invalid. The invalid is cured by the physician. The invalid recovers. The smith shoes the horse. The horse is shod by the smith. The carpenter makes a table. That table was made by my carpenter. The raven croaks. The gardener felled the tree. The tree falls.

105. To Verbs belong Mood, Tense, Number, and Person.

MOODS.

106. A Mood is the *mode* or manner in which an action is expressed.

107. There are six Moods; the Indicative, Subjunctive, Potential, Imperative, Infinitive or Substantive, Participial or Adjective.

108. The Indicative either asserts or denies, or is used in asking a question; as, *I praise, I do not praise, do I praise?*

109. The Subjunctive denotes a condition or supposition, and generally has some Conjunction (as *if* or *though*) before it; as, *If it rain.*

110. The Subjunctive differs from the Indicative in form, only in the Present Tense, except in the Verb *to be*, and in the Past Incomplete Active and Past Indefinite Passive, which have the Verb *to be* as their Auxiliary.

111. The Potential denotes possibility, power, or inclination; as, *He may come; He can go.*

112. The Imperative commands or entreats; as, *Praise thou; Bless thou us.*

113. The Infinitive expresses the meaning of the Verb in a general and indefinite way; as, *To play is pleasant.*

EXPL.—Here *to play* is in the Infinitive, and is used as a Substantive, being equivalent to the noun *play*. Hence the Infinitive is also called the Substantive Mood.

114. The Participle or Participial Mood expresses the meaning of the Verb after the manner of an Adjective; as, *Thus the children lived, loved by each other.*

EXPL.—Here *loved* is part of the verb *to love*, and also agrees with *children* like an Adjective. Hence the Participial is also called the Adjective Mood.

TENSES.

115. Tense is the distinction of Time.

116. There are three main Tenses: Present, Past, and Future.

Obs.—The word *tense* means *time*. (L. 460.) As all time is Present, Past, or Future, these are the main divisions of the Tenses.—*I write* TO-DAY, *I wrote* YESTERDAY, *I shall write* TOMORROW.

117. In the Active Voice there are four subdivisions of each main tense, except the Future; namely, the Indefinite, the Incomplete, the Complete, and the Emphatic.

THE TENSES EXPLAINED.

118. Actions are spoken of with reference to *times*, Indefinitely or Definitely. Hence the distinction of Indefinite and Definite forms under each main Tense. There is one INDEFINITE form in each Tense. Thus, *I write*, in the present; *I wrote*, in the past; *I shall write*, in the future. But there are two Definite Tenses. For an action may be *defined*, with reference to any time, in two ways; either as INCOMPLETE, or as COMPLETE, at that time. Hence, in each Tense there is a Definite form for the Incomplete, and a Definite form for the Complete.

(**Pres., Incomplete**) *I am writing*; (**Complete**) *I have written*;
(**Past, Incomplete**) *I was writing*; (**Complete**) *I had written*;
(**Fut., Incomplete**) *I shall be writing*; (**Complete**) *I shall have written*.

119. **Obs.**—The Complete Tenses have also a Progressive Form in the Active Voice; as, Present Complete, *I have written*; Progressive Form, *I have been writing*; Past Complete, *I had written*; Progressive Form, *I had been writing*; Future Complete, *I shall have written*; Progressive Form, *I shall have been writing*.

Expl.—*I have been writing* is Present, inasmuch as it brings the action down to the Present time; it is Complete, as the action is finished; it is Progressive, as it represents the action as having extended over a space of time.

120. But an action may also be spoken of in an **EMPHATIC**

way, except it be Future. Hence there is an Emphatic form in each Tense, except the Future. Thus, Present Emphatic, *I do write* ; Past Emphatic, *I did write*.

Obs. 1.—There is no Emphatic form in the Potential, Infinitive, or Participial Mood ; nor in any Mood of the Passive.

Obs. 2.—In Negative and Interrogative Sentences, the word *do* does not make the Verb Emphatic. Thus, *Do you know him ?* (Interrogative) ; and *You do not know him*, (Negative), are not Emphatic, but Indefinite.

Obs. 3.—The form, *I have written*, is usually called the Perfect Tense. This is a correct term ; for *perfect* means *complete* ; and *I have written* implies that the writing is *complete*. But it is complete *now*. So it is Present as well as Complete. It asserts the completion of an action at the *present* time. The *doing* of the action is *past*, but the *completeness* of the action is spoken of as *present*.

Obs. 4.—The Present Complete is used to express an action, the *effects* of which are spoken of as coming down to the present time. Thus we say, *Caesar has written his Commentaries in a very chaste style*. But we cannot say, *Caesar HAS WRITTEN his work on language in a very chaste style* ; for it has not come down to us. We must say, *Caesar wrote his work on language in a very chaste style*.

121. Obs. 5.—For the Incomplete in the Passive Voice there are two forms, one with the Participle in *ing* after the auxiliary *be*, as *the house is building* ; the other with *being*, and the Past Participle after the auxiliary, as, *the house is being built*. This form, with *being* and the Past Participle, is admissible only in the Past and Present Incomplete Tenses ; never in the Future. We cannot say *the house will be being built* ; nor can we say *the house had been being built* ; such a repetition of the *be* would offend the ear. Generally, where it can be used, the form with the Participle in *ing* merely is preferable, and, in such phrases as *the house is building, the book is printing, &c.*, is nearly always used ; but sometimes this form would cause ambiguity, or be wholly unintelligible ; as, if we were to say *the book is praising*. In such cases the other form must be used, or if that cannot be, the construction of the sentence must be changed altogether.

122. Verbs, like Nouns, have two NUMBERS, Singular and Plural.

123. Verbs have three PERSONS, corresponding to the Personal Pronouns. (65, 67.)

Obs.—Two of these Persons are made by terminations. Thus the Second Sing. by *est* or *st*; as, *thou tell-est, thou love-st*; the Third Sing. by *eth, es, or s*; as, *he tell-eth, he blush-es, he love-s*.

124. These distinctions of Mood, Tense, Number, and Person, are shewn (1st), by the context; or (2dly) by the inflection of the word; or (3dly) by the help of other Verbs, called **Auxiliaries**. (127.)

125. The second mode of distinction is seen in the forms, *thou call-est, he call-eth, he call-s, I call-ed*, where the parts *est, eth, s, ed*, mark certain peculiarities of Person, Tense, &c. So in the form, *I wrote*, the change of the Vowel from *i* to *o* (*write, wrote*), shews a difference of Tense.

Obs.—There were formerly several inflections in English which have now gone out of use. For example, the Infinitive ended in *en*, as it now does in the sister language, German. *To love, was to loven. To ben* (=to be) occurs in Shakspeare. The 1st and 3rd Plur. ended in *en*, as now in German. *They love was they loven. Chaucer has, they praisen, we slepten, &c.*

126. The third mode of distinction is by **Auxiliaries**; as, *I did write, I shall write*.

127. The **AUXILIARIES** are Verbs which are joined to other Verbs to help to mark their distinctions of Mood and Tense. They are *do, be, have, shall, will, may, can, let, must*.

128. Verbs which are not **Auxiliaries** are called **principal or independent Verbs**.

Obs.—*Do, be, have, will, let*, are independent Verbs, and not **Auxiliaries**, whenever they are not attached to other Verbs; as, *I do this; I am well*. Here *do* and *am* are independent Verbs.

129. Some Verbs are used only in the third person, with *it* as the Nominative. These are called **IMPERSONAL VERBS**; as, *It rains; It snows*.

130. Verbs that have not all the Moods and Tenses are called **DEFECTIVE VERBS**, as *ought*.

131. The following are the forms of the

AUXILIARY VERBS.

1.—TO DO.

PRESENT.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
I do	We do
Thou doest or dost	Ye or you do
He does or doth.	They do.

PAST.

I did	We did
Thou didst	You did
He did	They did.

2.—TO BE.

PRESENT.

INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
I am	(If) I be	We are	(If) we be
Thou art	(If) thou be	You are	(If) you be
He is.	(If) he be.	They are.	(If) they be.

PAST.

I was	(If) I were	We were	(If) we were
Thou wast	(If) thou wert	You were	(If) you were
He was.	(If) he were.	They were	(If) they were.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT, Being.

PAST, Been.

3.—TO HAVE.

PRESENT.

I have	We have
Thou hast	You have
He has or hath.	They have.

PAST.

I had	We had
Thou hadst	You had
He had.	They had.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT, Having

PAST, Had.

4.—SHALL.

PRESENT.

Singular.

I shall
Thou shalt
He shall.

Plural.

We shall
You shall
They shall.

PAST.

I should
Thou shouldst
He should.

We should
You should
They should.

5.—WILL.

PRESENT.

I will
Thou wilt
He will.

We will
You will
They will.

PAST.

I would
Thou wouldst
He would.

We would
You would
They would.

6.—MAY.

PRESENT.

I may
Thou mayst
He may.

We may
You may
They may.

PAST.

I might
Thou mightst
He might.

We might
You might
They might.

7.—CAN.

PRESENT.

I can
Thou canst
He can.

We can
You can
They can.

PAST.

I could
Thou couldst
He could.

We could
You could
They could.

8.—LET. (not changed.) 9.—MUST. (not changed.)

CONJUGATION OF THE ACTIVE VERB.

132. The Conjugation of a Verb is its arrangement in all its Moods, Tenses, Numbers, and Persons.

133. The following is the Conjugation of the Verb *to praise* :—

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

A. *Present Indefinite (Present).**Singular.**Plural.*

I praise

We praise

Thou praisest

Ye or you praise

He praises, or praiseth.

They praise.

B. *Present Incomplete.*

I am praising

We are praising

Thou art praising

You are praising

He is praising.

They are praising.

C. *Present Complete (Perfect).*

I have praised

We have praised

Thou hast praised

You have praised

He has praised.

They have praised.

Progressive Form. I have been praising, &c.

D. *Present Emphatic.*

I do praise

We do praise

Thou dost praise

You do praise

He does praise.

They do praise.

PAST.

A. *Past Indefinite.* (Past.)

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
I praised	We praised
Thou praisedst	You praised
He praised.	They praised.

B. *Past Incomplete.*

I was praising	We were praising
Thou wast praising	You were praising
He was praising.	They were praising.

C. *Past Complete.* (Pluperfect.)

I had praised	We had praised
Thou hadst praised	You had praised
He had praised.	They had praised.

Progressive Form. I had been praising, &c.

D. *Past Emphatic.*

I did praise	We did praise
Thou didst praise	You did praise
He did praise.	They did praise.

FUTURE.

A. *Future Indefinite.* (Future.)

I shall praise	We shall praise
Thou wilt praise	You will praise
He will praise.	They will praise.

B. *Future Incomplete.*

I shall be praising	We shall be praising
Thou wilt be praising	You will be praising
He will be praising.	They will be praising.

C. *Future Complete.* (Future Perfect.)

I shall have praised	We shall have praised
Thou wilt have praised	You will have praised
He will have praised.	They will have praised.

Progressive Form. I shall have been praising, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

A. *Present Indefinite.* (Present.)*Singular.**Plural.*

(If) I praise

(If) we praise

(If) thou praise

(If) you praise

(If) he praise.

(If) they praise.

B. *Present Incomplete.*

(If) I be praising

(If) we be praising

(If) thou be praising

(If) you be praising

(If) he be praising.

(If) they be praising.

C. *Present Complete.* (Perfect.)

(If) I have praised

(If) we have praised

(If) thou have praised

(If) you have praised

(If) he have praised.

(If) they have praised.

Progressive Form. (If) I have been praising, &c.D. *Present Emphatic.*

(If) I do praise

(If) we do praise

(If) thou do praise

(If) you do praise

(If) he do praise.

(If) they do praise.

PAST.

Past Incomplete.

(If) I were praising

(If) we were praising

(If) thou wert praising

(If) you were praising

(If) he were praising.

(If) they were praising.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Auxiliaries :—May, might, can, could, should, would, must.

PRESENT.

A. *Present Indefinite.* (Present.)*Auxiliaries* :—May, can, must.

I may praise

We may praise

Thou mayest praise

You may praise

He may praise.

They may praise.

B. *Present Incomplete.*

I may be praising

We may be praising

Thou mayest be praising

You may be praising

He may be praising.

They may be praising.

C. Present Complete. (Perfect.)*Auxiliaries* :—May have, can have, must have.*Singular.**Plural.*

I may have praised	We may have praised
Thou mayest have praised	You may have praised
He may have praised.	They may have praised.

PAST.**A. Past Indefinite. (Past.)***Auxiliaries* :—Might, could, should, would.

I might praise	We might praise
Thou mightest praise	You might praise
He might praise.	They might praise.

B. Past Incomplete.

I might be praising	We might be praising
Thou mightest be praising	You might be praising
He might be praising.	They might be praising.

C. Past Complete. (Pluperfect.)*Auxiliaries* :—Might have, could have, &c.

I might have praised	We might have praised
Thou mightest have praised	You might have praised
He might have praised.	They might have praised.

Progressive Form. I might have been praising, &c.**IMPERATIVE MOOD.****A. Present Indefinite.**

1. Let me praise	1. Let us praise
2. Praise, or praise thou	2. Praise, or praise ye
3. Let him praise.	3. Let them praise.

B. Present Incomplete.

1. Let me be praising	1. Let us be praising
2. Be praising, or be thou praising	2. Be praising, or be ye praising
3. Let him be praising.	3. Let them be praising.

D. Present Emphatic.

2. Do praise, or do thou praise.	2. Do praise, or do ye praise.
----------------------------------	--------------------------------

INFINITIVE (OR SUBSTANTIVE) MOOD.

A. *Present Indefinite.* (Present.)

To praise.

B. *Present Incomplete.*

To be praising.

C. *Present Complete.* (Perfect.)

To have praised.

Progressive Form. To have been praising.

PARTICIPLES (OR ADJECTIVE MOOD).

A. *Indefinite.* (Past.)

Praised.

B. *Incomplete.* (Present.)

Praising.

C. *Complete.* (Perfect.)

Having praised.

Progressive Form. Having been praising.

EXERCISE XXXI.

 (*) Write out the following Verbs in the same way, or in a tabular form as at page 162:—

Love, Amuse, Invite, Obey, Command, Submit, Please.

(b) Write over every Verb the part which it is:—

The boy asked his father for a bat. The father promises to give him one. I will send for one. The boys amuse one another. To command and to obey are different things. We have received an invitation. He will submit. He had arrived before the time. Thou lovedst thy parents. They have been reading. Why did you not leave the letter? I did leave it. The vessels had sailed before he arrived. I can hear you now. They would be glad to see you. I do not know that. The army had been retiring for some days. I have heard that. He is making arrangements to go away in a week. If he have it, let him say so. The men were receiving high wages. The builders will commence to-day; but when will they have finished? I shall be riding slowly along the road. I would

have spoken to him, if I had seen him. She will come if it be possible. Tell your brother I am going. Do tell him at once. He would not like me to go without seeing him. Our party ought to have won that game at cricket. My friend has now retired, respected by all. I should be coming more frequently, if I were more at leisure. I may come often, having retired from business. While digging up that field, he found some coins. We ought to be making greater progress. The newspaper may have come now. You cannot have the horse to-day. Let them be preparing that exercise, while I am hearing this class. If Charles finish his task in time, send him here to dinner. The horse having leaped the ditch was galloping along the road when we saw him. The girls must go now. If my brother come, tell him to walk in. I hope I shall have been reading three hours before you get up. They do esteem him very much. The children, having been running about the fields, have tired themselves. He might have been receiving a larger income, if he had been prudent. The army had been retiring for some days. They were saying that the men ought to have worked harder. Let them be going forward.

(c) Put all the following sentences into the corresponding forms of the Past and of the Future Tense Indicative :—

The boy obeys. We like cherries. They are submitting. I do believe what you say. I have surveyed the premises. He has commanded large armies. We are tying the knot. Thou lovest thy brother. Thy sister loves thee.

(d) Put the following sentences into the corresponding forms of the Present and Past Potential :—

We think differently. The boys and the girls are in the garden. The girl runs away. We have not said much about it. They are receiving information on the subject every day. Have you been doing so? The coach did not run last month. He had not done it then. You have not been behaving as you ought to have done. Did you hear him speak? The woodman had not cut down the trees last month.

134. The Passive Voice is formed by putting the Participle Indefinite after the various parts of the verb *to be*.

PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

A. *Present Indefinite.* (Present.)*Singular.**Plural.*

I am praised

We are praised

Thou art praised

You are praised

He is praised.

They are praised.

B. *Present Incomplete.* (See 121.)C. *Present Complete.* (Perfect.)

I have been praised

We have been praised

Thou hast been praised

You have been praised

He has been praised.

They have been praised.

PAST.

A. *Past Indefinite.* (Past.)

I was praised

We were praised

Thou wast praised

You were praised

He was praised.

They were praised.

B. *Past Incomplete.* (See 121.)C. *Past Complete.* (Pluperfect.)

I had been praised

We had been praised

Thou hadst been praised

You had been praised

He had been praised.

They had been praised.

FUTURE.

A. *Future Indefinite.* (Future.)

I shall be praised

We shall be praised

Thou wilt be praised

You will be praised

He will be praised.

They will be praised.

B. *Future Incomplete.* (See 121.)C. *Future Complete.* (Future Perfect.)

I shall have been praised

We shall have been praised

Thou wilt have been praised

You will have been praised

He will have been praised.

They will have been praised.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

A. *Present Indefinite.* (Present.)

Singular.

Plural.

(If) I be praised	(If) we be praised
(If) thou be praised	(If) you be praised
(If) he be praised.	(If) they be praised.

C. *Present Complete.* (Perfect.)

(If) I have been praised	(If) we have been praised
(If) thou have been praised	(If) you have been praised
(If) he have been praised.	(If) they have been praised.

PAST.

Past Indefinite.

(If) I were praised	(If) we were praised
(If) thou wert praised	(If) you were praised
(If) he were praised.	(If) they were praised.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

A. *Present Indefinite.* (Present.)

I may be praised	We may be praised
Thou mayest be praised	You may be praised
He may be praised.	They may be praised.

C. *Present Complete.* (Perfect.)

I may have been praised	We may have been praised
Thou mayest have been praised	You may have been praised
He may have been praised.	They may have been praised.

PAST.

A. *Past Indefinite.* (Past.)

I might be praised	We might be praised
Thou mightest be praised	You might be praised
He might be praised.	They might be praised.

C. *Past Complete.* (Pluperfect.)

I might have been praised	We might have been praised
Thou mightest have been praised	You might have been praised
He might have been praised.	They might have been praised.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

A. *Present Indefinite.* (Present.)*Singular.*

1. Let me be praised
2. Be praised, or be thou praised
3. Let him be praised.

Plural.

1. Let us be praised
2. Be praised, or be ye praised
3. Let them be praised.

INFINITIVE (OR SUBSTANTIVE) MOOD.

A. *Present Indefinite.* (Present.)

To be praised.

C. *Present Complete.* (Perfect.)

To have been praised.

PARTICIPLES (OR ADJECTIVE MOOD):

A. *Indefinite.* (Past.)

Praised.


B. *Incomplete.* (Present.)

Being praised.

C. *Complete.* (Perfect.)

Having been praised.

EXERCISE XXXII.

 (*) Write out the following Verbs in the same way, or in a tabular form as at page 162:—

Press, Love, Reprove, Correct, Blame, Fear.

(b) Underline the Active, draw your pencil through the Passive, Verbs; and write over each the part of the conjugation:—

You are flattered by others; but I will not flatter you. To be praised is pleasant, to be flattered is not. When the boy has been told the way, he will find it easily. The house was building, when I came by; when I returned the next week it was finished. When will the book be bound?—I sent it to the bookbinder's a month ago. It may be done easily. He should have been received. If the letter be written in time, you may send it. They might have been deceived. The Paradise Regained was written after the Paradise Lost. How should I know, if you do not know?

CHANGE FROM ACTIVE TO PASSIVE FORM.

135. **Obs. 1.**—The Passive implies an Agent and an Object as well as the Active Verb; but their order is reversed. When the **AGENT** takes the lead in the sentence, the Verb is Active, and is followed by the Object; when the **OBJECT** takes the lead, the Verb is Passive, and is followed by the Agent. Thus:—


ACTIVE. (Agent first.) *I love Charles.* (Object last.)

PASSIVE. (Object first.) *Charles is loved by me.* (Agent last.)

Obs. 2.—A sentence, then, may be changed from the Active to the Passive form, by turning the Objective into the Nominative, and the Nominative into the Objective, with the Preposition *by*; as, **ACT.**, *He strikes her*; **PASS.**, *She is-struck by him.*

EXPL.—The Objective *her* in the Active sentence is changed into the Nominative *she*; and the Nominative *he* into the Objective *him* with the Preposition *by*, and the Verb is made Passive.

EXERCISE XXXIII.

 (a) Turn the following sentences into the Passive Form; and then write over the Verbs the Mood, Tense, Number, and Person:—

All persons esteem an honest man. The teacher praises the diligent scholar. We love our parents. I have passed over many errors. His father often blamed him. They could have learnt their lesson. You will see them to-morrow. We inhabit a beautiful country. We love our country. We ought to love our country. The king promoted the captain. Milton wrote the *Paradise Lost*. Johnson wrote the *Rambler*. Virgil wrote the *Aeneid*. England has produced many great poets. The river had overflowed the fields. The sun will have scorched the grass.

(b) Turn the following sentences into the Active Form; and then write over the Verbs the Mood, &c.:—

Children are maintained and clothed by their parents. The good of the subjects was regarded by the sovereign. The cherries have been plucked by the boys. The apples had been stolen by the children. They will be punished by the master. St. Paul's Cathedral was built by Sir Christopher Wren. Wines are imported from France into England. Cotton is imported by the English into France. The prisoners would have been released by the king. The house was hired by them for a month. The lesson must be learnt by you.

REGULAR AND IRREGULAR VERBS.

136. Verbs are divided into two main classes, Regular and Irregular.

137. **REGULAR** Verbs are those which have the **PAST** Tense formed by the addition of *d* or *ed*; as, *love, loved*; *fill, filled*.

EXPL.—In *loved*, *d* is added to form the Past Tense; in *filled*, *ed* is added.

138. **IRREGULAR** Verbs are those which have the **PAST** Tense formed by a change or modification of the vowel; as, *sing, sang*; *bite, bit*.

EXPL.—In *sang* the vowel is **CHANGED**; the Present having *i*, the Past *a*; in *bite* the vowel is **MODIFIED**, the Present having the *i* long, the Past having the *i* short.

139. These two classes of Verbs are also called respectively, Weak Verbs and Strong Verbs.

140. Those Verbs which require an *addition* to them (*d* or *ed*) to make the Past Tense, are **WEAK VERBS**; and those which require no addition, but make the Past Tense by a change *within themselves*, are **STRONG VERBS**.

141. **Obs. 1.**—They are also called Verbs of the modern formation, and Verbs of the old formation; since the Strong Verbs are generally the older, and the Weak Verbs the more modern, words.

142. **Obs. 2.**—The Weak Verbs *regularly* have *d* or *ed* added to form the Past Indefinite Tense. (144.) Hence these are called Regular Verbs.


143. **Obs. 3.**—The Strong Verbs, having different vowels changed and modified in different ways, present a great *variety*. Hence they are called Irregular Verbs: not that they have no rule; but that they have many rules, and not one rule.

144. **Obs. 4.**—Verbs ending in a *k*, *p*, *f*, or *s* sound, in *gh* (sounded *f*), *ce* (sounded *s*), *sh* or *ch*, have the *ed* in the Past Tense pronounced like *t*. Thus, *revoke*, *revoked*; *steep*, *steeped*; *smack*, *smacked*; *shape*, *shaped*; *laugh*, *laughed*; *pass*, *passed*; *pronounce*, *pronounced*; *brush*, *brushed*; *bleach*, *bleached*.

Some Verbs of this kind frequently have the Past Tense written, as well as pronounced, with a *t*. Thus (in *l*), *dwell* and *spill* usually have *dwelt* and *spilt*, in preference to *dwelled* and *spilled* (the full forms are antiquated or grave): (in *n*) *learn* usually has *learnt*, in preference to *learned*: (in *p*) *leap* has *leapt*. In poetry the *t* is more frequently written for the *ed* than in prose: it makes the rhyme more obvious to the eye.

Three Verbs ending in *ay* have *ai* in the Past, and *d* added. *Lay*, *laid*; *pay*, *paid*; *say*, *said*. *Say* has the vowel sound modified also. (See Sect. 155 in the list.) Other Verbs in *ay* have *ed* added, as *pray*, *prayed*.

EXERCISE XXXIV.

 Underline the Weak Verbs; doubly underline the Strong:—

The man fell. Who spoke? I called him. She sang well. All stood up. The mob shouted. We came soon after. They fetched the knives. Who gave him the bat? The sun shone. He walked fast, but ran much faster. They always rose early. We received the letter this morning. Our friend wrote it last night. Who won the prize? You sat down directly. The boy grew fast. They returned the pencil. Who found it? They fulfilled their promise. The ship sank. Who tied the knot? He rode every day on horseback. Some one rang the bell and knocked at the door. The boys began their lesson. We met this morning in the park. They endeavoured to get in, but did not succeed. The thief hid the watch.

The quality of mercy is not strained:
It droppeth as the gentle rain from heaven
Upon the place beneath. It is twice blessed;
It blesseth him that gives and him that takes.

The earth shook and trembled. I knew him when a boy, but I have not seen him for many years. The desire of improvement discovers a liberal mind, and is connected with many accomplishments and many virtues.

145. The Strong or Irregular Verbs are *divided* into five conjugations, according as the vowel in the PRESENT Tense is, *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, or *u*.

146. **Obs.**—Verbs which have diphthongs (as *break*, *lead*, *shoot*, &c.) are generally classed under one of these conjugations, according to the vowel-sound which predominates. So, *break* is classed under the A, *lead* under the E, and *shoot* under the O, conjugation.

147. These five conjugations are *subdivided* according to the vowel which is found in the PAST Tense.

148. FIRST (or A) CONJUGATION.

Subdivision 1.

PRESENT.	PAST.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>a</i> , <i>ea</i> (sounded <i>ā</i>)	<i>o</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>oo</i>	<i>a</i> , <i>o</i> , <i>oo</i>
Awake	Awoke	Awoke
Bear	Bore <i>or</i> bare	Borne
Bear	Bore <i>or</i> bare	Born
Break	Broke <i>or</i> brake	Broken
Forsake	Forsook	Forsaken
Shake	Shook	Shaken
Stand	Stood	Stood
Swear	Swore <i>or</i> sware	Sworn
Take	Took	Taken
Tear	Tore <i>or</i> tare	Torn
Wear	Wore	Worn

Subdivision 2.

<i>a</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>a</i>
Draw	Drew	Drawn
Fall	Fell	Fallen
Slay	Slew	Slain

Subdivision 3.

<i>a</i>	<i>u</i>	<i>u</i>
Hang	Hung	Hung

149. SECOND (or E) CONJUGATION.

Subdivision 1.

PRESENT.	PAST.	PARTICIPLE.
ee, ēa	ě, ěa	ě, ea
Bēat	Bēat	Bēaten
Bleed	Bled	Bled
Breed	Bred	Bred
Ēat	Ēat, or āte	Eaten
Feed	Fed	Fed
Lead	Led	Led
Meet	Met	Met
Rēad	Rēad	Rēad
Speed	Sped	Sped

Subdivision 2.

ee, ēa	o, ā	o
Clēave	Clove, or clave	Cloven
Freeze	Froze	Frozen
Hēave	Hove	
Seethe	Sod	Sodden
Shēar	Shore	Shorn
Spēak	Spoke, or spake	Spoken
Stēal	Stole	Stolen
Wēave	Wove	Woven

Subdivision 3.

ě, ěa	ǒ	ǒ
Get	Got	Got, or gotten
Forget	Forgot	Forgotten
Tread	Trod	Trodden

Subdivision 4.

ee	aw	ee
See	Saw	Seen

150. THIRD (or I) CONJUGATION.

Subdivision 1.

PRESENT.	PAST.	PARTICIPLE.
I	I	i
Bite	Bit	Bitten, or bit
Chide	Chid	Chidden
Hide	Hid	Hid, or hidden
Slide	Slid	Slid, or slidden

Subdivision 2.

I	ă, u, o (sounded u)	a, u
Begin	Began	Begun
Bid	Bade	Bidden, or bid
Cling	Clung	Clung
Dig	Dug	Dug
Drink	Drank	Drunk, or
Fling	Flung	Flung [drunken
Ring	Rang	Rung
Shrink	Shrank	Shrunk, or
Sing	Sang	Sung [shrunk
Sink	Sank	Sunk, or sunken
Sit	Sat	Sat
Sling	Slung	Slung
Slink	Slank	Slunk
Spin	Span, spun	Spun
Spit	Spat	Spat
Spring	Sprang	Sprung
Stick	Stuck	Stuck
Sting	Stung	Stung
Stink	Stank, stunk	Stunk
Strike	Struck	Struck, or
String	Strung	Strung [stricken
Swim	Swam	Swum
Swing	Swung	Swung
Win	Won	Won
Wring	Wrung	Wrung

Subdivision 3.

PRESENT.	PAST.	PARTICIPLE.
i	ō, ā	i, o
Abide	Abōde	Abode
Drive	Drōve, <i>or</i> drave	Driven
Give	Gave	Given
Lie	Lay	Lain
Ride	Rōde	Ridden
Rise (<i>so</i> Arise)	Rōse	Risen
Shine	Shone	Shōne
Smite	Smōte	Smitten
Stride	Strōde	Stridden
Strive	Strōve	Striven
Thrive	Thrōve	Thriven
Write	Wrōte	Written

Subdivision 4.

i	ou	ou
Bind	Bound	Bound, <i>or</i>
Find	Found	Found [bounden
Fight	Fought	Fought, <i>or</i>
Grind	Ground	Ground [foughten
Wind	Wound	Wound

151. FOURTH (*or* o) CONJUGATION.

Subdivision 1.

ō, y	e	ě, ō
Blow	Blew	Blown
Crow	Crew	
Fly	Flew	Flown
Grow	Grew	Grown
Hold (<i>so</i> Behold)	Held	Held, <i>or</i> holden
Know	Knew	Known
Throw	Threw	Thrown

Subdivision 2.

oo, ū	ō, ō	ō, ō
Chouse	Chose	Chosen
Shoot	Shōt	Shot

152. FIFTH (*or* u) CONJUGATION.

u, o (<i>sounded</i> u)	ă, ā	u, o (<i>sounded</i> u)
Run	Ran	Run
Come (<i>so</i> Become)	Came	Come

PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

A. *Present Indefinite.* (Present.)*Singular.**Plural.*

I am praised

We are praised

Thou art praised

You are praised

He is praised.

They are praised.

B. *Present Incomplete.* (See 121.)C. *Present Complete.* (Perfect.)

I have been praised

We have been praised

Thou hast been praised

You have been praised

He has been praised.

They have been praised.

PAST.

A. *Past Indefinite.* (Past.)

I was praised

We were praised

Thou wast praised

You were praised

He was praised.

They were praised.

B. *Past Incomplete.* (See 121.)C. *Past Complete.* (Pluperfect.)

I had been praised

We had been praised

Thou hadst been praised

You had been praised

He had been praised.

They had been praised.

FUTURE.

A. *Future Indefinite.* (Future.)

I shall be praised

We shall be praised

Thou wilt be praised

You will be praised

He will be praised.

They will be praised.

B. *Future Incomplete.* (See 121.)C. *Future Complete.* (Future Perfect.)

I shall have been praised

We shall have been praised

Thou wilt have been praised

You will have been praised

He will have been praised.

They will have been praised.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

A. *Present Indefinite.* (Present.)

Singular.

Plural.

(If) I be praised	(If) we be praised
(If) thou be praised	(If) you be praised
(If) he be praised.	(If) they be praised.

C. *Present Complete.* (Perfect.)

(If) I have been praised	(If) we have been praised
(If) thou have been praised	(If) you have been praised
(If) he have been praised.	(If) they have been praised.

PAST.

Past Indefinite.

(If) I were praised	(If) we were praised
(If) thou wert praised	(If) you were praised
(If) he were praised.	(If) they were praised.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

A. *Present Indefinite.* (Present.)

I may be praised	We may be praised
Thou mayest be praised	You may be praised
He may be praised.	They may be praised.

C. *Present Complete.* (Perfect.)

I may have been praised	We may have been praised
Thou mayest have been praised	You may have been praised
He may have been praised.	They may have been praised.

PAST.

A. *Past Indefinite.* (Past.)

I might be praised	We might be praised
Thou mightest be praised	You might be praised
He might be praised.	They might be praised.

C. *Past Complete.* (Pluperfect.)

I might have been praised	We might have been praised
Thou mightest have been praised	You might have been praised
He might have been praised.	They might have been praised.

PARTICIPLE INDEFINITE.

157. The Participle Indefinite of the Regular or Weak Verbs is the same as the Past Indefinite Tense; as, *love, loved, loved*.

EXPL.—*Loved* is both the Past Tense and the Participle.

158. The Participle of the Irregular or Strong Verbs mostly ends in *en*, or *n*; as, *broken, known*. But many Verbs have lost the *en*; as, *find, found, found*.

159. OBS. 1.—Many Strong Verbs have a form with *en*, and a form without *en*; as, *bind, bound, bounden, or bound*. Both are used. The form with *en* is generally used as an Adjective; thus we say, *he is bound to do so*, but *it is his bounden duty to do so*. Sometimes the form with *en* is used only in certain phrases. Thus, *fought-en*, in the phrase “a well-foughten battle;” *hold-en*, in reference to a meeting or levee being held; *strick-en*, in the phrase “well-stricken in years.”

160. OBS. 2.—Many Strong Verbs had, formerly, Participles in *en*, which are now wholly disused in ordinary or regular speech. But they are found in old English. The following are in the Bible: *lien*, from *lie*; *folden*, from *fold*.

161. OBS. 3.—The Participle in *en* is not confined to the Strong Verbs. Many Weak Verbs have it. Thus, *grave, hew, lude, load, mow, rive, saw, shape, shave, shew, sow, strew, strow, swell, wax*, have the Past regularly in *ed*, but the Participle Complete in *en* or *n*; *graven, hewn, laden, loaden, mown, riven, sawn, shapen, shaven, shewn, sown, strewn, strown, swollen, waxen*. So *wash, washen*, in the Compound *unwashen*.

162. OBS. 4.—In Mixed and Contracted Verbs the Participle Indefinite is *always* the same as the Past Indefinite Tense; as, *put, put, put*; *tell, told, told*: except, *do, did, done*.

163. The following Verbs are quite Irregular:


Am	Was	Been	Have	Had	Had
Go	Went	Gone	Make	Made	Made
Dare	Durst	Dared			

Obs. 1.—The Tenses of the first two are made up of different Verbs. The Verb *to be* has the Participle *been* from *be*; the Past Tense *was, were*, &c., is from another Verb, (the Anglo-Saxon *wasan*, to be), obsolete in other forms in English: the Present, *am*, is from another Verb. *Went*, used as the Past of *go*, is in reality the Past of *wend*, like *bend, bent*. Wiclif used *gede* as Past of *go*, like *do, did*. Then, *go* was a Mixed Verb, *go, gede, gone*.

Obs. 2.—*Gone*, like *done* and *borne*, is peculiar merely in having the *e* transposed; so that the word is not *go-en, do-en, bor-en*, but *go-ne, do-ne, bor-ne*.

Obs. 3.—*Have* has the Past *had*, softened from *haved*; and *make* has *made*, softened from *maked*.

EXERCISE XXXV.

 Underline the Contracted Verbs, doubly underline the Mixed Verbs, and enclose the Strong Verbs in brackets. Write over them their Mood, Tense, Number, and Person:—

Tell them to burst open the door. He has heard that the ship split upon the rock. Always spend less than your income. I think they must have been dreaming. Why are her eyes swollen? She has been weeping. He would not lend me the bat, but wished to sell it, although it cost him nothing. When a young person has lost his modesty, he is an object of dislike.

No busy steps the grass-grown foot-way tread,
But all the bloomy flush of life is fled;
All but yon widowed, solitary thing,
That feebly bends beside the plushy spring;
She, wretched matron! forced in age, for bread,
To strip the brook with mantling cresses spread,
To pick her wintry faggot from the thorn,
To seek her nightly shed, and weep till morn:
She only left of all the harmless train,
The sad historian of the pensive plain.

He who never thinks, can never be wise. Time was given us, that we might buy with it the blessings of eternity. Never leave that to be done the next hour which may properly be done now, nor dare to put off till to-morrow the business which you may as well begin to-day. Let us seek out a desolate shade.

ADVERBS.

164. An Adverb is a word joined to a Verb, an Adjective, or an Adverb, to qualify it, or to specify some circumstance about it ; as, *A most clever boy. He walks FAST. He runs VERY well.*

EXPL.—In the first sentence *most* is joined to the Adjective *clever*, and qualifies it ; so *fast* qualifies the Verb *walks*, and *very* the Adverb *well* : *most, fast, very* are therefore Adverbs.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

 (a) Underline the Adverbs :—

The wind blew terribly. The sun shines mildly. The stars are very bright. The world is very large. The snow is exceedingly deep. The grass is quite green. The boys swim badly. The ball went far beyond the wall. The eagle flies exceedingly high. The lark sings beautifully. I am rather tired. Where is the boy ? He is somewhere about the house. I know where he did it, when he did it, why he did it, and how he did it.

(b) Insert the Adverbs which are omitted :—

Wild flowers fade (). Glass is () brittle. Sheep are () useful. Well-baked bread is () wholesome. The invalid walks (). Meat is () nutritious. Do you like cherries () ? The exercise is () written. I () saw such bad writing. Young people should rise (). The bells ring (). The boy has () returned.

DEGREES OF ADVERBS.

165. Some Adverbs are compared in the same way as Adjectives, by adding *er* for the Comparative, and *est* for the Superlative. Thus, *often, oftener; oftenest; soon, sooner, soonest; long, longer, longest.*

Obs.—All these words were originally Adjectives. So *well, better, best; ill, worse, worst.*

166.—Adverbs are also compared by *more* and *most* prefixed ; as, *wisely, more wisely, most wisely.*

Obs.—Some of the common Adverbs are, in fact, Comparatives, as *ere, after, more* ; or Superlatives, as *next, first, most.*

KINDS OF ADVERBS.

167. Adverbs are of several kinds.

(1.) *Adverbs of Time.*

To-day, To-morrow, Yesterday, Early, Late, Before, After, Ere, Soon, Now, Presently, Immediately, Directly, At once, Next, Once, Then, When, Ago, While, Whilst.

(2.) *Adverbs of Place.*

Here, There, Hence, Thence, Whence, Above, Below, Yonder, Far, Wide, Near, Within, Without, Forth, Forwards, Backwards, Sideways, Right, Left, Off, To and Fro.

(3.) *Adverbs of Number.*

Once, Twice, Thrice, Firstly, Secondly, Thirdly, &c.

(4.) *Adverbs of Manner.*

Well, Ill, Slowly, Politely, Quickly, Patiently, Richly, Poorly, Cleverly, Wisely, Stupidly, Sweetly, How, &c.


(5.) *Adverbs of Degree.*

Very, Highly, Excessively, Exceedingly, Almost, Quite, Enough, Extremely, Nearly, Especially, Scarcely, How.

(6.) *Adverbs of Affirmation or Negation.*

Yes, Yea, Aye; Not, No, Not-at-all.

EXERCISE XXXVII.

 Write over each Adverb what *kind* of Adverb it is. Thus:—A.D. (*i.e.* Adv. of Degree.)

Very.

Where are you going? He went immediately. He has long been ill. He seldom comes now. He was here lately. Scarcely had he left the house, when the roof fell in. Suddenly it became cloudy. I commonly rise before seven. They were not ready soon enough. He receives weekly thirty shillings. He nearly lost his situation. The Review comes out quarterly. He walks daily. He is always very happy to see us. The captain has just been finding the latitude by the meridian altitude of the sun. Charles the First fought unsuccessfully with his parliament. When Columbus discovered the West Indian Islands, they were thickly peopled with Indians; but now there are none found there. Can I go very soon? Yes.

PREPOSITIONS.


168. A Preposition is a word *put before* Nouns or Pronouns, to shew their relation to some other Nouns or Pronouns ; as, *The boy is on the wall.*

EXPL.—Here *on* is a Preposition, for it is put before *wall*, and shews the relation of the Noun *wall* to the Noun *boy*.

The principal Prepositions are :—

About, Above, According to, Across, After, Against, Along, Amid, Amidst, Among, Amongst, Around, At, Athwart, Before, Behind, Below, Beneath, Besides, Between, Betwixt, Beyond, By, Concerning, Down, During, Except, Excepting, For, From, In, Into, Instead of, Near, Nigh, Of, Off, On, Out, Out of, Over, Regarding, Respecting, Round, Since, Through, Throughout, To, Touching, Towards, Under, Underneath, Unto, Up, Upon, With, Within, Without.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

 Underline the Prepositions, and enclose within brackets the Nouns to which they belong ; thus, *at* (home) :—

The sun was just above the horizon. I will come after supper. He was leaning against the wall when the chimney-pot fell. I did not see her among them. A long friendship has subsisted between them. He was not at home when I called. I said I would call again before eight o'clock. They had laid a great beam across the path, and I fell on it. Did you meet with any serious accident? Is there a garden behind the house? I had not heard of that. The church was on the hill ; and his house was in the valley, just below the hill. It was beneath him to act in that manner. We passed by the church in our way. Did you go into the park? Yes, we walked through it. It was very hot throughout the whole day. Touching that matter, I have heard nothing since I saw you. I was rowing up the stream. He got his horse from the stable, and jumped upon it, and rode off. We walked round the town. He is walking towards the house. He ran across the fields, down the lane, into the road. He left to-day for Brussels.

CONJUNCTIONS.

169. A Conjunction is a word which joins words, clauses, or sentences together ; as, *James and George. He will go, if I remain.*

EXPL.—Here the words *James and George* are joined together by *and* ; so the sentences, *He will go, I remain*, are joined together by *if* ; *and* and *if* are therefore Conjunctions.

The principal Conjunctions are :

Also, And, As, Because, Besides, But, Else, Ever, Except, For, Further, Furthermore, Hence, However, If, Likewise, Moreover, Nevertheless, Nor, Notwithstanding, Or, Save, Since, Than, That, Then, Therefore, Too, Unless, Whereas, Yet.

170. Conjunctions which answer to one another, are Correlative Conjunctions ; they are :

Although, Though—yet ; Both—and ; Either—or ; Neither—nor ; Not only—but, but also ; So—as ; Whether—or.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

 Underline the Conjunctions :—

Although it rained so heavily, yet he came. The winter has been neither wet nor cold. Not only the boys, but the girls also, came. No sooner had the family left, than the roof fell in. He wrote it so as to be read. Whether you go or not, I shall. Both James and George fell from their horses. I doubt not but that you will like it when you have tried it. Write either the one or the other. A garden is not only pleasant, but useful.

INTERJECTIONS.

171. An Interjection is a word which expresses some feeling or wish ; as, *Ah ! it was very unfortunate.*

EXPL.—*Ah !* expresses the feeling of regret, and is an Interjection. So *bravo ! well done !* express the feeling of approval.

The principal Interjections are :

Ah ! Ab me ! Aha ! Alas ! Alack ! Away ! Begone ! Bravo ! Dear me ! Eh ? Fie ! Ha ! Halloo ! Hark ! He ! Heigh ! Hey-day ! Hist ! Ho ! Hoy ! Hollo ! Hulloh ! Hurrah ! Hush ! Lo ! O ! Oh ! Oh dear ! Pooh ! Psha ! Tush !

SECT. II.—THE FORMATION OR DERIVATION
OF WORDS.

172. Words are either Roots or Derivatives.

173. Roots are words which cannot be traced back to any simpler words as their origin, but are themselves the simplest form ; as, *strike*.

174. Derivatives are words formed from Roots; as, *stroke*, *striker*.

175. Derivatives are either Primary or Secondary.

176. Primary Derivatives are made by an *internal* change or modification ; as, Root *strike* ; Prim. Deriv. *stroke*.

177. Secondary Derivatives are made by an *external* addition, that is, by Affixes or Prefixes ; as Root *strike* ; Sec. Deriv. *striker*.

EXPL.—The Primary Derivative *stroke* is formed by the change of *i* in *strike* to *o*. The Secondary Derivative *striker*, is formed by the addition of the affix *er*. Thus the two classes of Derivatives correspond to the two classes of Verbs, Strong Verbs and Weak Verbs ; and they may be called, respectively, Strong Derivatives and Weak Derivatives.

PRIMARY DERIVATIVES.

178. Primary Derivatives are formed—

(1.) By changing or modifying the vowel of the Root ; as, Root *bind* ; Prim. Deriv. *bond*.

(2.) By changing or modifying the last consonant ; as, Root *Stick* ; Prim. Deriv. *stitch*.

(3.) By changing or modifying BOTH the vowel and the last consonant ; as, Root *weave* ; Prim. Deriv. *woof*.

(4.) By the initial augment, *s* or *t* ; as, Root *melt* ; Prim. Deriv. *smelt*.

OBS. 1.—By a **CHANGE** of the vowel is meant the putting another vowel in its place; as Root *bind*; Prim. Deriv. *bond*. By a **MODIFICATION** of the vowel is meant the shortening or lengthening of the *same* vowel; as Root *bite*; Prim. Deriv. *bit*.

OBS. 2.—By the **CHANGE** of the consonant is understood the putting another consonant of the same kind in its place; as Root *dig*; Prim. Deriv. *dike*; or the expanding it into a fuller sound; as, Root *dig*; Prim. Deriv. *ditch*. By the **MODIFICATION** of the consonant is understood the softening or sharpening of the sound; as, Root *lose*; Prim. Deriv. *loss*.

OBS. 3.—Many Primary Derivatives, however, exhibit no change of vowel or consonant, but are the same as the Roots. Thus from the Verbs *to praise*, *to fall*, *to wit* (meaning to know), we have the Nouns *praise*, *fall*, *wit*.

OBS. 4.—Generally where the Verb and the Noun are the same in form, the consonant is pronounced soft in the Verb, and sharp in the Noun; as, *to house* (= *houze*), *a house*.

OBS. 5.—A letter is to be judged of by the *sound*, not by the mere *character* which represents it. The character may remain the same when the *sound* is different; as in the verb *house* and the noun *house*. So far from the same character necessarily representing the same sound, the rules of orthography sometimes render it necessary even to *change* the letter, in order to keep the sound; as in *mouse*, *mice*. If this were written *mise*, it would be pronounced *mize*, like *wise*. On the same principle, *c* is changed into *k* in *cat*, *kitten*; *cook*, *kitchen*; *cow*, *kine*; because *c* followed by *i* has the *sound* of *s*.

OBS. 6.—The words of the English language are derived from various sources. The groundwork of the grammar and the great mass of the most common words are Anglo-Saxon. But there have been gradually introduced multitudes of words from other languages, especially from the Latin and the French. Large numbers of Latin words have come to us *through* the French. Terms of art and science are generally from the Greek or Latin. There are also a few from the Eastern languages, as Arabic, &c.

OBS. 7.—Words of Saxon origin are called Pure English: those of other origin, Mixed English.

Obs. 8.—All English Roots are of Saxon origin. All the Strong Verbs are Roots.

Obs. 9.—Many Verbs had *formerly* the Strong conjugation, which have not *now*: these also are Roots. For example, *laugh*, *quake*, *delve* (which now make *laughed*, *quaked*, *delted*), used to make *lough*, *quake*, *dolve*. These are Roots.

Obs. 10.—With a small exception, Primary Derivatives are all Pure English. All English words, Pure or Mixed, may have Secondary Derivatives (subject to the usual rules of formation); but only Pure English words can have Primary Derivatives: **EXCEPT** of the second kind; *viz.* where the last consonant is changed or modified; as, *use* (*uze*), *use*; *relieve*, *relief*. Only Pure English words have Primary Derivatives made by the change of the vowel.

179. VERBS are formed as Primary Derivatives,

(1.) By changing or modifying the vowel.

ROOTS.	DERIV.	ROOTS.	DERIV.	ROOTS.	DERIV.
Fall	Fell	Rise	Raise	Chop	Chip
Shake	Shock		Rouse	Drop	Drip
Rest	Roost	Lie	Lay		Droop
Knell	Knoll	Din	Dun	Sop	Sip
Sit	Set	Sniff	Snuff	Fly	Flee

(2.) By changing or modifying the last consonant.

Stick	Stitch	Cling	Clinch	Dog	Dodge
-------	--------	-------	--------	-----	-------

(3.) By changing or modifying the vowel *and* consonant.

Hound	Hunt	Cling	Clench	Glass	Glaze
Wake	Watch	Drink	Drench	Grass	Graze
Hook	Hitch	Wring	Wrench	Drag	Dredge

(4.) By the initial augment *s* or *t*.

Dun	Stun	Mash	Smash	Plash	Splash
Knap	Snap	Melt	Smelt	Wag	Swag, Sway
Lash	Slash	Nip	Snip	Whirl	Swirl, Twirl

180. NOUNS are formed as Primary Derivatives,

(1.) By changing or modifying the vowel.

Roots.	DERIV.	Roots.	DERIV.	Roots.	DERIV.
Gāpe	Gāp	Let	Lot	Bite	Bit
Scrāpe	Scrāp	Tell	Tale	Click	Clock
Crack	Creak	Deal	Dole	Sing	Song
Bear	Bier	Lear-n	Lore	Knit	Knot
Sell	Sale	Feed	Food	Drive	Drove
Sneak	Snake	Deem	Doom	Strike	Stroke
Bless	Bliss	Len-d	Loan	Sit	Seat

(2.) By changing or modifying the last consonant.

Strive	Strife	Dig	Ditch	Lay	Law [<i>saying</i> .]
Believe	Belief	Speak	Speech	Say	Saw (<i>a wise</i>)
Behoove	Behoof	Wreathe	Wreath	Use	Use
Prove	Proof	Gird	Girth	Devise	Device

(3.) By changing or modifying the vowel and consonant.

Seethe	Sud	Brēathe	Brēath	Choose	Choice
Bāthe	Bāth	Weave	Woof	Hold	Hilt
Lāthe	Lāth	Līve	Life	Clothe	Cloth
Break	Breech	Lōse.	Lōss	Bake	Batch

181. ADJECTIVES are formed as Prim. Deriv.

(1.) By changing or modifying the vowel.

Heal	Hale	String	Strong	(De) file	Foul
Heat	Hot	Wring	Wrong	Flit	Fleet
Fill	Full	Pride	Proud	Shine	Sheen


(2.) By changing or modifying the last consonant.

Loathe	Loth	Milk	Milch
--------	------	------	-------

(3.) By changing or modifying the vowel and consonant.

Wis (=to know)	Wise	Love	Lief
----------------	------	------	------

EXERCISE XL.

 Write out the Primary Derivatives from the following words; underline the letter or letters changed or modified, and state respecting each what the change or modification is:—

(Verbs) Drop, Rise, Drink, Hook, Melt, Sit, Fly.

(Nouns) Sell, Bless, Knit, Drive, Dig, Choose, Glass.

(Adjectives) Fill, Pride, Heat, Wis.

SECONDARY DERIVATIVES.

182. Secondary Derivatives are formed by Affixes or Prefixes made to the Roots; as, Root *lead*; Affix *er*; Sec. Deriv. *leader*: Root *lead*; Prefix *mis*; Sec. Deriv. *mislead*.

Obs.—AFFIXES are letters or syllables put at the *end* of words; as the letter *t* in *weigh-t*, and the syllable *ly* in *king-ly*. PREFIXES are letters or syllables put at the *beginning* of words; as the letter *a* in *a-board*, and the syllable *mis* in *mis-take*.

183. Affixes are either mere terminations, as *er*, *ness*, in *leader*, *weakness*; or distinct words, which have come to be used as terminations; as, *like*, *ful*, in *warlike*, *fearful*.

184. Obs. 1.—In Secondary Derivatives, the vowel is very often changed or modified as well; as, *long*, *length*; *steal*, *stealth*.

Obs. 2.—Secondary Derivatives, it has been said (182), are made by Affixes or Prefixes. There are Affixes and Prefixes, however, of Saxon and of other origin. These will be treated separately. Now, *generally* speaking, Saxon affixes are added to Saxon words, as in *handsome*, *some* is a Saxon affix, and *hand* is a Saxon word; while Latin and other foreign affixes are added to Latin and other foreign words, as in *final*, *fin* is a Latin word (*finis*, end), and *al* is a Latin affix (*alis*; *fin-alis*). But to both these general rules there are some exceptions. In the first place, we have many foreign words which take Saxon Affixes or Prefixes; as in *un-just*, *just* is a Latin word (*justus*), but *un* is a Saxon prefix. So, in the second place, we have many Saxon words which take foreign affixes; as in *truism*, *true* is a Saxon word, but *ism* is a Latin and Greek affix. But the former case is much more common than the latter; it is much more common for *foreign* words to have *Saxon*, than for *Saxon* words to have *foreign*, affixes and prefixes.

Saxon with LAT. Aff. or Pref.

tru-ism
bond-age
dis-like
re-blind

Latin with SAX. Aff. or Pref.

apt-ness
order-ly
mis conduct
un-just.

PURE ENGLISH AFFIXES.

VERBS.

185. Verbs are formed by the terminations *en*, *le*, *er*, *y*, and *ish*.

(1.) By *en*, as *weak-en*, *strength-en*.

EXPL.—*En*, added to Adjectives, has the force of ‘to make,’ as *weaken*, ‘to make weak;’ added to Nouns, it has the force of ‘to give,’ as *strengthen*, ‘to give strength to.’ So

(^a) Merely *en* added. (^b) Consonant doubled. (^c) *e* dropt.
 Dark-en Glad-d-en Whit-en

(2.) By *le*, as *hand-le*, *start-le*.

So *strag-g-le* fr. *stray*; *crumb-le* fr. *crumb*; *wrig-g-le* fr. *wry*; *wad-d-le* fr. *wade*; *shuf-f-le* fr. *shove*; *pad-d-le* fr. *pad*; *scuf-f-le* fr. *scuff*; *nib-b-le* fr. *nip*; *drib-b-le* fr. *drip*; *wrang-le* fr. *wring*; *grap-p-le* fr. *gripe*; *ram-b-le* fr. *roam*.

Obs.—After a vowel or *r*, only *l* (not *le*) is put, as *knee-l* fr. *knee*. So *draw-l* fr. *draw*; *mew-l* fr. *mew*; *gnar-l* fr. *gnarr*, an old word meaning a knot in a tree; *sнар-l* fr. *sneer*.

(3.) By *er*, as *glim-m-er* fr. *gleam*.

So *wand-er* fr. *wend* (to go); *frit-t-er* fr. *fret* (to eat away); *stag-g-er* fr. the Anglo-Saxon *stigan* (to walk); *swag-g-er* fr. *sway* or *swag*; *clamb-er* fr. *climb*; *whim-p-er* fr. *whine*; *wav-er* fr. *wave*; *sput-t-er* fr. *spit*; *ling-er* fr. *long*; *bat-t-er* fr. *beat*.


Obs.—Most of these Verbs in *le* and *er* are a sort of Diminutives from other Verbs, and often imply that the action is repeated again and again, or done by little and little; as, *nibble*, from *nip*, implies a number of small nippings; *patter*, from *pat*, implies many small pappings. We say, a person *pats* another on the shoulder, but, rain *patters* against the window.

(4.) By *y*, as *wor-r-y* fr. *wear*.

So *sul-l-y* fr. *soil*; *bull-y* fr. *bull*; *whin-n-y* fr. *whine*.

(5.) By *ish*, as *burn-ish*, *publ-ish* (L. 347).

EXERCISE XLI.

 Write out twenty other Verbs in *en*, and six in *le* :—

NOUNS.

186. Nouns denoting PERSONS, are formed by the terminations *er*, *yer*, *ar*, *ard*, *ster*, *man*, Masculine; and by *ess*, *stress*, *ine*, *woman*, *maid*, Feminine.

MASCULINE.—(1.) By *er*, as *sing-er*.

Obs.—These may be divided into four classes; the first three on the same principle as the Verbs above; the fourth class has the *y* changed to *i* before the vowel.

(a) Talk-er (b) Plod-d-er (c) Writ-er (d) Fli-er

Obs.—Words with this termination do not always denote a Masculine agent, but sometimes an instrument; as, *nut-crack-er*, *fet-t-er* (fr. *foot*), *break-er*, *stop-p-er*, *shut-t-er*.

(2.) By *yer*, as *bow-yer*, *saw-yer*, *law-yer*.

Obs.—These are words ending in *w*; but not all words in *w* take *yer*, for we have *hew-er*, *druw-er*, *mow-er*, &c.

(3.) By *ar*, as *li-ar*, *begg-ar*.

(4.) By *ard*, as *slug-g-ard* fr. *slug*, *slow*.

So *nig-g-ard*, *cow-ard* fr. *to cow*, *dast-ard* *lag-g-ard*, *drunk-ard*, *dot-ard*, *dull-ard*, *wix-ard* fr. *to wix*.

Obs.—Some Nouns with this termination are not names of persons, as *standard*. This termination is the same as *ar*, only strengthened by the letter *d*, as *soun-d* (L. 436) is. So *sal-t* (L. 399) is strengthened by *t*.

(5.) By *ster*, as *pun-ster*, *trick-ster*.

So *whip-ster*, *young-ster*, *upholsterer* = *uphol(d)ster*.

Obs.—The termination *ster* was in Anglo-Saxon confined to Feminine Nouns, and so it was formerly in English, as is seen now in *spin-ster*. This class of words was very numerous. Some of them have gone out of common use, and are known now only as Proper Names; such as *Web-ster* (= weaver), *Kemp-ster* (= comber), *For-ster* (= forester), *Barter* or *Bag-ster* (= back-ster, i. e. baker), *Brew-ster* (= brewer), *Demp-ster* (= deemster) fr. *to deem*, an old term for a judge, still used in the Isle of Man. *Barrister* has an *i* inserted as a connecting vowel, and the *r* is doubled.

(6.) By *man*, as *tin-man*, *wood-man*.

Obs. 1.—Sometimes a word has the termination *er*, and *man* also, as *fish-er-man*. Sometimes we have a word in *er*, and one in *man*, from the same root. As *tin-n-er* and *tin-man*. So, also, *hunt-er* and *hunt-s-man*.

Obs. 2.—Frequently a euphonic *s* is inserted, as in *hunt-s-man*, *seed-s-man*, *sword-s-man*.

Obs. 3.—This termination is common in Proper Names, as *Young-man*, *New-man*, *Hol-man* or *Ho-man* (= *Old-man*).

FEMININE.—(7.) By *ess*, as *god-d-ess*

So *poet-ess*, *mistr-ess* fr. *master*, *shepherd-ess*.

Obs.—This affix is probably of Latin origin, but is inserted here for the sake of the next, which is, then, half Saxon, half Latin.

(8.) By *stress* (= *ster-ess*), as *song-stress*.(9.) By *woman* or *maid*, as *char-woman*, *work-woman*, *milk-maid*.

Obs.—Sometimes with the termination *er* also, as *wash-er-woman*, like *fisherman*.

187. DIMINUTIVES.—Diminutives are formed by the terminations *kin*, *ling*, *ock*, *let*.(1.) By *kin*, as *lamb-kin*.

So *pip-kin* fr. *pipe*; *firkin* fr. *four*; being the fourth part of a barrel; *mannikin* fr. *man*. Here the *i* is only a euphonic insertion; the *n* of course is doubled.

Obs.—This termination is common in Proper Names; as, *Wat-kin* fr. *Walter*; *Simp-kin* fr. *Samuel*, formed as *Simp-son* is fr. *Samuel* and *Son*; *Per-kin* contracted fr. *Peter-kin*; *Tom-kin* fr. *Thomas*; *Wul-kin* fr. *William*; *Hawkin* fr. *Hal*, *Harry*.


(2.) By *ling*, as *dar-ling* fr. *dear*.

So *gos-ling* (= *goose-ling*), *duck-ling*, *found-ling*, *under-ling*, *suck-ling*, *lord-ling*, *wit-ling*, *strip-ling*, *sap-ling*, *hire-ling*.

(3.) By *ock*, as *hill-ock*, *bull-ock*.(4.) By *let*, as *ring-let*, *stream-let*, *brook-let*.

Obs.—This affix is perhaps partly of French origin; *et* also (p. 79) is sometimes Saxon, sometimes French.

EXERCISE XLII.

 Write out twenty other Nouns in *er*, (ten persons, ten instruments) four in *ster*, six in *man* (two with euphonic *s*): —

ABSTRACT NOUNS.

188. Abstract Nouns denote state, quality, or the like; as, *truth*, the being true.

EXPL.—Here from the Adjective *true* we have the Abstract Noun *truth*, which denotes the state or quality of *being true*. So from *weak* we have *weakness*, the *being weak*.

189. OBS.—Many abstract Nouns may be applied from the quality or condition to the *whole body* of those who possess the quality, or are in the condition specified; sometimes also to *one person*. The word *youth* will exemplify all three uses:

(1.) *The youth of the king was a disadvantage.* Here *youth* means *youthfulness*.

(2.) *The British youth are distinguished for their sense of honour.* Here *youth* means the *whole body* of those who are *young*, the young men.

(3.) *The youth came to town yesterday.* Here *youth* means a *person in the state of youthfulness* or *youth*, a young man.

190. Abstract Nouns are formed by the terminations *ness*, *ery*, *th*, *t*, *hood*, *head*, *ship*, *dom*, *ter*, *red*, *lock* or *ledge*, *ing*.

(1.) By *ness*, as *dark-ness*, *white-ness*.

(2.) By *ery*, as *mock-ery*, *slav-ery*, *cook-ery*.

OBS. 1.—If the word ends in *w*, or two consonants, only *ry* is added, as *Jew-ry* fr. *Jew*; *out-law-ry* fr. *law*; *hus-band-ry* fr. *husband*; *found-ry* fr. *found*; and if the word already ends in *er*, only *y* is added, as *flatter-y* fr. *flatter*. So *beggar-y* fr. *beggar*. *Smith-y* has the *er* omitted for euphony.

OBS. 2.—Words with the terminations *ness* and *ery* also denote, 1. A place, as *wild-er-ness*, *fast-n-ess*, *nurs-ery*; or, 2. A person or number of persons, as *wit-ness*, *soldi-ery*. Of course, such words are not Abstract Nouns at all.

(3.) By *th*, as *leng-th* fr. *long*.

So *streng-th* fr. *strong*; *mir-th* connected with *merry*; *dea-th* fr. *die*; *tru-th* fr. *true*, and connected with the Verb *trow*, meaning to *know*; *you-th* fr. *young*; *ru-th* fr. *rue*, seen in the Adjective *ruth-less*; *grow-th* fr. *grow*; *steal-th* fr. *steal*; *dear-th* fr. *dear*; *heal-th* fr. *heal*; *filth* fr. (*de*) *file*.

(4.) By *t*, as *sigh-t* fr. *see*.

So *migh-t* fr. *may*; *fligh-t* fr. *fly*; *heigh-t* fr. *high*; *weigh-t* fr. *weigh*; *shif-t* fr. *shape*; *fros-t* fr. *freeze*; *drough-t* fr. *dry*; *draugh-t* fr. *draw*; *pligh-t* fr. *pledge*; *wright* fr. *work*; *sleigh-t* fr. *sly*; *guil-t* fr. *guile*; *blas-t* fr. A.-S. *blāsan*, 'to blow.'

OBS. 1.—This termination is only a variation of *th*. We had formerly *high th*, *low-th*. *Highth* (which is the word always used by Milton) has become *heigh-t*, and *low-th* has gone out of use altogether.

OBS. 2.—In the words *sight*, *might*, &c., the *gh* belongs to the root, and is lost or disguised in the Verbs. *Y*, in *may* and *fly*, represents a *g*-sound, which is seen, though not heard, in *fligh-t* and *migh-t*.

(5.) By *hood*, as *man-hood*, *hardi-hood*.(6.) By *head*, as *God-head*.

OBS.—This termination is only a variation of *hood*.

(7.) By *ship*, as *hard-ship*, *friend-ship*.

OBS.—The termination *ship* is from the Verb *to shape*, the original meaning of which is, *to make*, which sense is still seen in the word *shapen*, in the Bible, Psalm 51.

(8.) By *dom*, as *king-dom*.

So *earl-dom*, *martyr-dom*, *christen-dom* (= christian-dom), *heathen-dom*, *duke-dom*, *free-dom*, and its opposite, *thral-dom*.

OBS.—This termination originally signified possession, property, or rule, as in *king-dom*, *earl-dom*; but afterwards merely quality or condition, as in *free-dom*, *thral-dom*.

(9.) By *ter*, as *laugh-ter*, *slaugh-ter* fr. *slay*.(10.) By *red*, as *hat-red*, *kin-d-red*.


OBS.—*Kindred* was formerly written *kinred*; the *d* is euphonic.

(11.) By *lock* or *ledge*, as *wed-lock*, *know-ledge*.

OBS.—These terminations are from the Anglo-Saxon termination *lac*, in which many Anglo-Saxon words end.

(12.) By *ing*, as *read-ing*, *writ-ing*. (274.)

EXERCISE XLIII.

 Write out twenty Nouns in *ness*, six in *ery*, ten in *ship*, two in *t*, three in *hood*, and twenty in *ing* :—

191. Many Nouns are formed also by the terminations *d*, *m* or *om*, *ow*, *en* or *n*, *le*, *et*, *el*.

(1.) By *d*, as *see-d* fr. *sow*.

So *dee-d* fr. *do*; *floo-d* fr. *flow*; *for-d* fr. A.-S. *faran* to go; *bran-d* fr. *burn*; *mea-d* fr. *mow*; *cu-d* fr. *chew*.

(2.) By *m* or *om*, as *bloo-m* fr. *blow*.

So *sea-m* fr. *sew*; *glea-m* fr. *glow*; *tea-m* fr. *tow*; *bloss-om* fr. A.-S. *blæsan*, to blow; *qual-m* fr. *quail*.

(3.) By *ow*, as *shad-ow* fr. *shade*.

So *bar-r-ow* fr. *to bear*; *mead-ow* fr. *mead*; *wind-ow* fr. *wind*.

192. Obs.—In the words *sorrow*, *morrow*, *tallow*, and some others, the *ow* represents a *g*, which is seen in German, where the corresponding words are *sorge*, *morgen*, *talg*.

(4.) By *en*, or *n*, as *ward-en* fr. *ward*, = *guard*

So *maid-en* fr. *maid*; *heav-en* fr. *heave*; *gard-en* connected with *yard*; *burth-en* connected with *bear*; *tok-en* fr. *teach*; *mai-n* fr. *may*, as in the phrase *might and main*.

(5.) By *le*, as *gird-le* fr. *gird*.

So *set-t-le* fr. *set*; *bund-le* fr. *bind*; *spit-t-le* fr. *spit*; *spin-d-le* fr. *spin*; *rund-le* fr. *round*; *lad-le* fr. *lade*; *thimb-le* fr. *thumb*; *prick-le* fr. *prick*; *shut-t-le* fr. *shoot*; *tread-le* fr. *tread*.

(6.) By *el*, as *satch-el* fr. *sack*.

So *shov-el* fr. *shove*; *swiv-el* fr. A.-S. *swifan*, to turn round; *kern-el* (Germ. *kern*); *tram-m-el* fr. *tram*.

(7.) By *et*, as *hatch-et* fr. *hack*.

So *thick-et*; *pocket* fr. A.-S. *pocca*, a poke, or bag; *mall-et* (*mall* is used by old writers), *latch-et*, *tick-et*, *cask-et*, *flower-et*, *crick-et* (Obs. under *let*, p. 67).

Obs.—The two last terminations often have a diminutive force; as, *satch-el*, a little *sack*; *flower-et*, a little *flower*.

193. Obs.—In many words a euphonic *n* is inserted, before *g*; as *passen-ger* fr. *passage*; *porring-er* fr. *porridge*; *messen-ger* fr. *message*; *wharfing-er* fr. *wharfage*. So *nightingale* fr. *night*, and A.-S. *galan* to sing (S. 74). The *t* before *n* in *nightingale* is only a connecting vowel to join the two parts of the word together (Germ. *nachtigall*).

ADJECTIVES.

194. Adjectives are formed by the terminations *y*, *en*, *ern*, *ish*, *like*, *ly*, *erly*, *some*, *full*, *less*, *ed*, *ward*, *th*, *ty*, and *fold*.

(1.) By *y*, as *might-y*, *head-y*.

So *rain-y*, *flower-y*, *luck-y*, *stead-y*, *angr-y* fr. *anger*; *sundr-y* fr. *sunder*. If the word ends in *y*, *ey* is added, as *clay-ey*.

(2.) By *en*, as *lead-en*, *gold-en*.

So *silk-en*, *brax-en*, *bar-r-en* fr. *bare*; *sull-en* fr. *sulk*. If the word ends in *r*, only *n* is added, as *leather-n*.

Obs.—Adjectives with this termination for the most part denote the material of which anything is made. They were formerly more numerous than they are now. *Cedar-n*, *ston-en*, *silver-n*, were in use. Now we use the Nouns *cedar*, *stone*, *silver*, as Adjectives.

(3.) By *ern*, as *north-ern*, *south-ern*, *east-ern*, and *west-ern*.

(4.) By *ish*, as *pun-ish*, *slav-ish*, *Rom-ish*.

Obs.—This termination is used in three ways; 1. In a Diminutive sense, as *black-ish*; 2. For opprobrious words; as *thiev-ish*; 3. In proper names, as *Gaul-ish*.

(5.) By *like*, as *lady-like*, *war-like*.

Obs.—Words of this class may be called Compounds, being, in fact, compounded with the word *like*.

(6.) By *ly*, as *gentleman-ly*, *king-ly*.

Obs.—This *ly* is only a softened form of *like*. Generally, when added to a Noun, it forms an Adjective; as, *man-ly*; when added to an Adjective it forms an Adverb; as, *bad-ly*.

(7.) By *erly*, as *north-erly*, *south-erly*.

(8.) By *some*, as *tire-some*, *hand-some*.

So *win-some*, *game-some*, *delight-some*, *glad-some*, *fulsome*, *buzom* (=buck-some), *mettle-some*, *irk-some*.

Obs.—This termination denotes possession of some quality.

(9.) By *ful*, as *fear-ful*, *fruit-ful*.

Obs.—Words of this sort are, in fact, compounded with the word *full*. *Fearful*=full of fear.

(10.) By *less*, as *law-less*, *sense-less*.

Obs.—This termination denotes the *absence* of a thing ; as *lawless* = without law.

(11.) By *ed*, as *wretch-ed*, *rag-g-ed*.

Obs.—This termination abounds especially in Compounds, as *neat-hand-ed*, *golden-wing-ed*. (201.)

(12.) By *ward*, as *south-ward*, *fro-ward*.

So *un-to-ward*, *down-ward*, *awk-ward*, fr. *awk*, an old word meaning *left* : *awkward* is *left-handed*, the opposite of *dexterous*, which means *right-handed*.

Obs.—The termination *ward* implies *direction* ; *fro-ward*, in the direction from.

(13.) By *th*, as *four-th*, *six-th*.


Obs.—These Adjectives are all Ordinal Numerals. (94.)

(14.) By *ty*, as *for-ty*, *six-ty*.

Obs.—These Adjectives are all Cardinal Numerals. (92.)

(15.) By *fold*, as *four-fold*, *six-fold*.

EXERCISE XLIV.

 Write out ten other Adjectives with each of the terminations, except *ern*, *erly*, and *some* :—

ADVERBS.

195. Adverbs are formed by the terminations *ly*, *ce*, *st*, *s*, *ward* or *wards*, *wise*, *ways*, and *times*.

(1.) By *ly*, as *bad-ly*, *nob-ly* (= *noble-ly*).

(2.) By *ce*, as *on-ce*, *twi-ce*, *thri-ce*.

(3.) By *st*, as *whil-st*.

So the preposition *among-st* fr. *among*, *amid-st* fr. *amid*.

(4.) By *s*, as *beside-s* fr. *beside*.

So *while-s* fr. *while* ; *hereabout-s*, fr. *about*.

(5.) By *ward*, *wards*, as *for-ward*, *back-wards*.

(6.) By the words *wise*, *ways*, *times* ; as, *other-wise*, *al-ways*, *four-times*.

Obs.—The word *wise* is another form of *guise*, and is not the same as *ways*, the plural of *way*.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE.

(On the Derivation of Pure English Words.)

(a) Explain the following words:—

(Verbs.) Sharpen. Waddle. Glimmer.—(Nouns.) Baker, Sawyer. Beggar. Drunkard. Gamester. Coachman. Seedsman. Heiress. Lambkin. Hillock. Gosling. Brooklet. Goodness. Robbery. Strength. Gift. Height. Falsehood. Friendship. Satchel. Seam. Team (of horses).—(Adjectives.) Mighty. Golden. Reddish. Warlike. Manly. Darksome. Frightful. Fearless.—(Adverbs.) Badly. Otherwise.

(b) Write Derivatives from Sell, Bear, Lose, Dig, Feed, Break, Tell, Bind; thus:—

ROOT.	PRIM. DERIV.	SEC. DERIV.
Verb.	Object.	Agent. Abstract Noun.
Drive.	Drove.	Driver. Driving.

(c) Write Twelve Nouns, which are the same as their Verbs, (Strong Verbs); thus:—

VERBS.	NOUNS.
To Fall.	A Fall.

(d) Write Ten Names of Persons with the termination *er*: Five from Nouns, as *Gardiner*, fr. *garden*; Five from Verbs, as *Walker*, fr. *to walk*.

(e) Change the form of the following sentences, using the Abstract Noun for the Adjective, thus:—

SENTENCE.—I admire the *beautiful* fields.Changed.—I admire the *beauty* of the fields.

Be not discouraged by a DIFFICULT undertaking. We are astonished at the LEARNED author. We admire the WISE philosopher. I love SIMPLE nature. He is afraid of the SEVERE climate. The LONG walk tired me. The FINE scenery made up for the fatigue. He had been suffering from the DAMP air. I am astonished at his BOLD spirit.

(f) Change the form of the following sentences, using Adjectives with the prescribed terminations:—

(ISH).—You are just like a child. This cloth has rather a green colour.

(FUL).—He takes care. He has many fears. That book is of great use.

(Y).—He shewed much anger. The soil abounds in clay. I want sleep.

(EN).—The pipe was made of lead. He had on a crown of gold.

(LY).—That was the act of a man. He speaks in the true style of a king.

(g) Change the form of the following sentences, using the ADVERB instead of the ADJECTIVE; thus:—

SENTENCE.—He is a quick walker.

Changed.—He walks quickly.

He is a good rider. They are good riders. He is a beautiful writer. He is a clear reader. He has a very ready memory for every thing. He is an awkward runner. He is a good swimmer. He was a very clever talker. He is a very eloquent preacher. We travel in a careful and safe way.

(h) In the following sentences, underline the Adjectives in *ly*; doubly underline the Adverbs in *ly*:—

The soldiers fought bravely. They sing sweetly. They acted in a very gentlemanly manner. It was a goodly sight. He writes badly. He had a weakly constitution. He walks weakly. He goes to town daily. This is his daily occupation. She seems very lively. He has acted wisely. It was one of the kindest of actions. He always acts kindly towards me.

PURE ENGLISH PREFIXES.

196. Secondary Derivatives are formed also by Prefixes; as Root, *wise*; Sec. Der. *un-wise*.

(1.) By the Prefix *a*, as *a-rise*, *a-shore*.

So (VERBS) *a-rouse*, *a-wake*; (ADVERBS) *a-head*, *a-board*.

Obs.—*A* often means *on*, as *ashore* = *on shore*.

(2.) By *be*, as *be-speak*, *be-side*.

So (VERBS) *be-have*, *be-take*; (ADVERBS) *be-neath*, *be-fore*.

Obs. 1.—The *be* changes Neuter Verbs into Active; as, *speak*, *be-speak*; or it changes a Noun into a Verb; as, *friend*, *be-friend*; or it modifies the meaning of the Verb; as, *take*, *be-take*.

Obs. 2.—In Adverbs *be* means *by*; as, *be-cause* = *by-cause*.

(3.) By *un*; as, *un-do*, *un-wise*.

Obs.—*Un* means *not*. In Verbs it means the undoing of the action implied by the simple Verb.

(4.) By *mis*; as, *mis-take*, *mis-lead*.

Obs.—This Prefix implies wrongness or error; and is connected with the Verb *to miss*.

(5.) By *for* or *fore*; as, *for-bid*, *fore-go*.

So *for-bear*, *for-swear*, *for-lorn*, *for-give*, *for-sake* (fr. *seek*).

Obs.—*For* has a negative meaning: it is sometimes equivalent to *off* or *away*. Though it is sometimes spelt *fore*, as in *fore-go*, it must not be confounded with the *fore* which is seen in *fore-tell*.

(6.) By *gain*; as, *gain-say*.

So *gain-stand* and *gain-strive* were used formerly.

Obs.—*Gain* means *against*, which is derived from *gain* (Germ. *gegen*). The Verb *to gain* is quite another word.

(7.) By *fore*; as, *fore-tel*, *fore-shew*.

Obs.—This Prefix is equivalent to *before* or *beforehand*.

(8.) By *n*; as, *n-ever*, *n-one*, *n-either*, *n-or*.

Obs.—This is a negative Prefix, and means *not*.


(9.) By *to*; as, *to-day*, *to-morrow*, *to-night*.

Obs.—*To* is a corruption of *the* or *this*. In some parts of England, *to-year* is used as we use *to-day*.

(10.) By *with* ; as, *with-stand*, *with-draw*.

Obs.—This Prefix means *against*, or *away*.

EXERCISE XLV.

 Write out three Verbs and three Adverbs with the Prefix *a* ; three with *be* ; twenty words with *un* ; ten with *mis* :—

COMPOUNDS.

197. A Compound Word is one made up of two or more words, as *horse-shoe*.

Expl.—Instead of saying *the horse's shoe*, or *the shoe of the horse*, we use one word, *horse-shoe*, made up of *horse* and *shoe*.


198. The unity of the word is shewn in speaking, by the accent. The principal accent falls on one word, and the other loses its accent as a *distinct* word. Thus, in *horse-shoe*, *horse* has the principal accent, and *shoe* has only a subordinate one.

199. Compound words may be made up of SEVERAL words ; as, *handicraftsman*, from *hand*, *craft*, *man*.

200. The parts of a Compound may be different parts of speech. They may be two NOUNS, as *steam-boat*, *coach-box* ; or they may be ADJECTIVE and NOUN, as *holy-day*, *safe-guard* ; or Adjective and Verb, as *vouch-safe* ; or two Adjectives, as *golden-feathered* ; or Adverb and Adjective, as *ever-lasting* ; or two Adverbs, or Prepositions, or other particles, as *here-after*.

201. Compound words consisting of an Adjective and a Noun often take the termination *ed*, as from *neat* and *hand*, the Compound *neat-handed* ; so *blue-eyed*, *bright-haired* ; the termination means *having* or *endued with*. This class of Compounds is very numerous, especially in poetry.

EXERCISE XLVI.

 (a) Explain the following words fully :—

Mid-night, Hedge-row, Sun-shine, Sun-set, Earth-quake, Wood-land, Never-falling, Shower-drop, Foot-step, Truth-loving, Hus-band, Ware-house, Hot-house, Olive-grove, Golden-winged, Over-step, Under sell, Up-land, Sea-sick, Horse-dealer.

(b) Account for the various parts of the following words, thus :—

VERB.	EUPHONIC	NOUN.	ADJ.	TERM.
	LETTER.			

S p o r t - s - m a n - l i k e.

Hand-i-craft-s-man.	Un-like-li-hood.	Un-sight-li-ness.
Back-wood-s-man.	Mis-trust-ful ly.	Short-com-ing s.
Wear-i-some-ness.	Mir-th-ful-ness.	Un wear-i-ed ly.
Hard-heart-ed-ness.	Streng-th-en-er.	Mis under-stand-ing-s.

LATIN AFFIXES.

(The bracketed numbers after the words refer to the List of Derivatives from Latin, pp. 84—85.)

202. VERBS are formed by the termination *ate* or *ite*; as, *vac-ate* (494), *exped-ite* (324).

203. NOUNS denoting PERSONS are formed—

(1.) By the termination *tor* or *sor*; as, *rec-tor* (383), *spon-sor* (441).

(2.) By *trix*; as, *execu-trix* (414).

Obs.—*Trix* is the fem. affix, answering to the masc. *tor*.

204. ABSTRACT Nouns, and Nouns denoting THINGS, are formed—

(1.) By the affix *ion*; as, *reg-ion* (383).

(2.) By *tion* or *sion*; as, *ac-tion* (8), *exten-sion* (461).

(3.) By *ty* or *ity*; as, *digni-ty* (89).

(4.) By *tude*; as, *longi-tude* (215).

(5.) By *ence* or *ance*; as, *depend-ence* (318).

(6.) By *ture* or *sure*; as, *pic-ture* (327), *era-sure* (378).

(7.) By *acy*; as, *fall-acy* (114).

(8.) By *ice*; as, *just-ice* (192).

(9.) By *mony*; as, *acri-mony* (1).

(10.) By *ment*; as, *monu-ment* (253).

(11.) By *our* or *or*; as, *ard-our* (24).

(12.) By *t* or *te*; as, *fac-t* (113), *da-te* (93).

205. DIMINUTIVES:—

(1.) By *aster*; as, *poet-aster*.

(2.) By *le*, *ule*, or *ula*; as, *radic-le* (377), *glob-ule* (159), *form-ula* (142).

(3.) By *icle*; as, *part-icle* (307), *veh-icle* (501).

(4.) By *cule*; as, *animal-cule* (15).

206. ADJECTIVES are formed—

- (1.) By the termination *al* ; as, *reg-al* (383).
- (2.) By *ian* or *an* ; as, *Christ-ian*, *sylv-an* (fr. *silva*, a wood).
- (3.) By *ane*, *ene*, or *ine* ; as, *mundane* (*mundus*, the world), *terr-ene* (467), *mar-ine* (227).
- (4.) By *il*, *ile*, or *tile* ; as, *civ-il* (57), *serv-ile* (422), *vola-tile* (399).
- (5.) By *ar*, *ary* ; as, *solar* (430), *auxiliary* (32).
- (6.) By *tive* or *sive* ; as, *cap-tive* (43).
- (7.) By *tory* or *sory* ; as, *migra-tory* (241), *cur-sory* (76).
- (8.) By *ant* or *ent* ; as, *ard-ent* (24).
- (9.) By *te* or *se* ; as, *seda-te* (415), *diffu-se* (151).
- (10.) By *ic* or *ical* ; as, *naut-ical* (267).
- (11.) By *id* ; as, *tim-id* (471), *horrid* (173).
- (12.) By *ose* or *ous* ; as, *verb-ose* (505), *vitre-ous* (517).
- (13.) By *aceous* ; as, *crust-aceous* (fr. *crusta*, a shell).
- (14.) By *olent* or *ulent* ; as, *vi-olent* (*vis*, force), *turb-ulent* (485).
- (15.) By *ible* ; as, *ed-ible* (104).
- (16.) By *fic* (113) ; as, *terri-fic* (468).
- (17.) By *ferous* (121) ; as, *somni-ferous* (11).
- (18.) By *ple* (338) ; as, *tri-ple* (478).

207. ONS. 1.—Most of these affixes also form Nouns from Adjectives, as (1) moral ; (2) Christian ; (3) divine ; (4) aedile, reptile ; (5) familiar, auxiliary ; (6) captive ; (7) inventory ; (8) student ; (9) associate, recluse ; (10) classic ; (11) liquid.

208. ONS. 2.—The terminations *tive* and *able*, are often added to pure English words ; as, *talk-ative*, *eat-able*.

GREEK AFFIXES.

(The numbers after the words refer to the List of Derivatives from Greek.)

209. VERBS are formed by the termination *ize* or *ise*; as, *critic-ize* (30). (Sect. 184, Obs. 2.)

210. NOUNS denoting PERSONS are formed by the termination *ist*; as, *soph-ist* (149).

211. ABSTRACT NOUNS, and Nouns denoting THINGS, are formed—

(1.) By the affix *ad* or *id*; as, *Ili-ad*, *Aene-id*.

212. OBS.—Nouns in *ad* or *id* are poems; as, *Aenēid* (the hero being Aenēas); or districts, as *Troad*, the district of Troy.

(2.) By *ma*; as, *panora-ma* (106), (112).

(3.) By *sm* or *ism*; as, *spa-sm* (150), *magnet-ism*, *soph-ism* (149).

(4.) By *y* or *ē*; as, *monarch-y* (13), *anatom-y*, *epi-tom-e* (168), *cata-stroph-e* (157).

(5.) By *sis*; as, *cri-sis* (30), *empha-sis* (120).


(6.) By *ic* or *tic*, *ics* or *tics*; as, *rhetor-ic* (145), *arithme-tic* (15), *eth-ics* (43).

213. DIMINUTIVES are formed by the affix *isk*; as, *aster-isk* (16), *obel-isk* (*obelos*, a spike).

214. FRENCH AFFIXES.—Nouns denoting PERSONS are formed by the affix (1.) *ier* or *eer*; as, *caval-ier*, *mountain-eer*: (2.) By *ee*; as, *assign-ee*, *less-ee*. Nouns denoting THINGS are formed (3.) by *age*; as, *herb-age*, *pastur-age*. The affix *age* often denotes the sum paid on any thing; as in *ton-n-age*, *wharf-age*.

215. FRENCH PREFIXES.—Many words are formed (1.) with the prefix *en* or *em*; as, *en-camp*, *em-power*: (2.) With *pur*; as, *pur-sue*, *pur-vey*: (3.) With *sur*; as, *sur-render*, *sur-round*.

EXERCISE XLVII.

 Write out fifty other examples with any of the above affixes except the Greek, and twenty with any of the Greek:—

LATIN PREFIXES.

216. *A, ab, abs*, away, from; as, *a-vert* (508), *ab-use* (492), *abs-tract* (475).

Ad (*ac, al, an, ap, as, at*) to; as, *ad-vert* (508), *ac-cede* (48).

Ante (*anti*) before; as, *ante-date* (93), *anti-cipate* (43).

Circum (*circu*) round; as, *circum-vent* (504), *circu-it* (107).

Con (*com, col, co*) with; as, *con-tract* (475), *com-pose* (346), *col-lect* (203), *co-equal* (4).

Contra (*counter*) against; as, *contra-dict* (86), *counter-act* (8).

De down; as, *de-scend* (408).

Dis (*dif, di*) apart, away; as, *dis-sent* (418), *dif-fer* (121), *di-late* (121).

Ex (*ef, e*) out; as, *ex-ceed* (48), *e-ject* (188).

Extra beyond; as, *extra-vagant* (496).

In (*im, il, ir*) in, into; as, *in-sert* (421), *im-pel* (317).

In (*im, il, ir*) not, as, *in-justice* (192), *im-prudent* (513), *il-legal* (205), *ir-regular* (383).

Inter between; as, *inter-vene* (504).

Intro to within; as, *intro-duce* (101).

Ob (*oc, of, op*) against; as, *ob-struct* (449), *oc-casion* (39), *of-fer* (121), *op-pose* (346).

Per (*pel*) through, over; as, *per-spire* (440), *pel-lucid* (220).

Post after; as, *post-pone* (346).

Prae (*pre*) before; as, *pre-fix* (126).

Pro forth; as, *pro-ject* (188).

Praeter by, past; as, *preter-mit* (250).

Re back, again ; as, *re-pel* (317).

Retro backwards ; as, *retro-grade* (160).

Se apart ; as, *se-cede* (48), *se-duce* (101).

Sub (*suc, suf, sur, su*) under, up ; as, *sub-join* (191), *suc-cour* (76), *suf-fer* (121).

Subter underneath ; as, *subter-fuge* (149).

Super over, above ; as, *super-fluous* (138).

Trans (*tra*) beyond ; as, *trans-it* (107), *tra-dition* (93).

Ultra beyond ; as, *ultra-marine* (227).

GREEK PREFIXES.

217. *An* or *a* (*av* or *a*) not ; as, *an-archy* (13).

Amphi (*αμφι*) both, two ; as, *amphi-bious* (21).

Ana (*ανα*) up ; as, *ana-tomy* (168).

Anti (*αντι*) against ; as, *anti-pathy* (113).

Apo (*απο*) from ; as, *apo-logy* (79).

Cata (*κατα*) down ; as, *cata-strophe* (157).

Dia (*δια*) through ; as, *dia-meter* (86).

En (*em*) (*εν*) in, on ; as, *em-phasis* (120).

Epi (*επι*) upon ; as, *epi-taph* (159).

Ex (*εξ*) out ; as, *Ex-odus* (66), *ec-stasy* (152).

Hyper (*υπερ*) over ; as, *hyper-critical* (30).

Hypo (*υπο*) under ; as, *hypo-thesis* (167).


Meta (*μετα*) beside ; as, *meta-morphosis* (93).

Para (*παρα*) beside ; as, *para-phrase* (125).

Peri (*περι*) round ; as, *peri-phery* (121).

Syn (*sym, syl*) (*συν*) with ; as, *syn-tax* (158).

EXERCISE XLVIII.

 Write out fifty other examples with any of the above Latin Prefixes, and twenty others with any of the Greek Prefixes :—

218. DERIVATIVES FROM ANGLO-SAXON.

1. *Ac, an oak*; *ac-orn* (*i. e.* *ac-corn*, *fr. ac*, and *corn a grain*), *Ack-worth* (171).
2. *Ær, before*; *ere*, *ear-ly*, *er-st*.
3. *Æthel, noble*; *Athel-ing* (*the title of the heir to the Saxon throne*), *Ethel-red* (116), *Athel-stan* (138), *Athel-ey* (49), in *Somersetshire*, where *Alfred and his nobles concealed themselves from the Danes*.
4. *An, one*; *an, a*, *an-y*, *on-ly*.
5. *Bætan, to rein in*; *bit* (*for horses*).
6. *Bald, brave*; *bold*, *Bald-win* (169), *Ed-bold* (50).
7. *Bana, death, killer*; *bane*, *baneful*, *ratsbane*, *wolfsbane*.
8. *Beodan, to order*; *bid*, *bed-el* or *bead-le*.
9. *Beon, to be*; *be*.
10. *Beorgan, to protect*; *burg*, *burh*, *borough*, *Ed-burga* (50), *Edinburgh*; *i. e.* *Edwin's burgh*.
11. *Beorht, bright*; *Ethel-bert* (3), *ALBERT* (53).
12. *Bicnian, to nod*; *beck*, *beck-on*, *beac-on*.
13. *Blac, pale*; *bleach*.
14. *Blæsan, to blow*; *blast*, *blossom*; *bluster*.
15. *Bot, a satisfaction*; *boot* (*in the phrase to-boot*), *boot-less*; *conn. w. bet* in *better*.
16. *Bidan, to wait*; *bide*, *a-bide* (*A.-S. botl, a dwelling*), *Bothwell*, *El-bottle* (51).
17. *Brad, broad*; *broad*, *Brad-burn* (21), *Brad-hurst* (93).
18. *Brucan, to use*; *broke* (*an old word meaning 'to have the use of,' found in*, *broker and the P. N. Brook-man, i. e. Broke-man, (like Chapman)*).
19. *Buan, to cultivate*; *boor* (*i. e. a peasant*), *neigh-bour*.
20. *Bugan, to bend*; *bow*, *bough*, *bay*, *bight*, *el-bow* (55).
21. *Burne, stream*; *Ash-burne*, *Brad-burne* (17).
22. *By, bye, dwelling*; *Apple-by*.
23. *Cæpian, to buy*; *to chop* (*in the sense of to barter*), *chaff-er*, *cheap*, *chap-man*, *chap*, *Cheapside* (*i. e. Market side*), *East-cheap*, *Chep-stow* (144), *Chippenham* (86), *Chipping Norton*.
24. *Cæster or Cester, fort, town*; *Chester*, *Lei-cest-er*, *Man-ches-ter*, *Col-ches-ter* (*fort on the Coln*).
25. *Ceowan, to chew*; *chew*, *cud*.
26. *Campian, to fight*; *champion*.
27. *Ceorl, a countryman*; *churl*.
28. *Cnafa, a boy, servant*; *knave* (*Germ. knabe, a boy*).
29. *Cunnan, to know*; *ken*, *uncouth*.
30. *Cunnian, to search out*; *con*, (*ale*) *conner*, *cunning*.
31. *Cweallan, to slay*; *quell*, *kill*.
32. *Cwethan, to speak*; *quoth*.
33. *Cwysan, to crush*; *quash*, *a-queue*.
34. *Cyn, race*; *kin*, *kind*, *kindred*.
35. *Cyththe, kindred*; *kith*, *kit* (*in the phrase kit and kin*).
36. *Dæg, day*; *dawn*.
37. *Deawian, to moisten*; *dew*, *bedew*, *dough*, *thaw*.
38. *Demnan, to judge*; *deem*, *doom*, *deemster*; *P. N. Dempster*.
39. *Denu, vale*; *den*, *Walden* (= *Wald-den*, 157).
40. *Deor, any wild animal*; *deer*.
41. *Disc, plate, board*; *disc*, *desk*, *dish*.
42. *Don, to do or put*; *do*, *don* (*i. e. do on*), *doff* (*i. e. do off*), *dout* (*i. e. do out*) *in some parts of England* *dup* (*i. e. do up*).
43. *Dreogan, to work*; *drudge*.
44. *Drigan, to dry*; *dry*, *drough-t*, *drug*.
45. *Dugan, to be worth*; *dough-ty*.
46. *Dun, a hill*; *downs*, *Snow-don*, *Hunting-don*.
47. *Dwinan, to fade*; *dwindle*.
48. *Dyppan, to dip*; *dip*, *deep*, *dive*.
49. *Ea or eas, water*; *is-land*; *in names of islands or places near to water*, as *Angles-ey*, *Bermonds-ey*.
50. *Ead, possession, prosperity*; *Edward* (161), *Ed-win* (169).
51. *Eald, old*; *old*, *eld*, *alderman*, *Al-thorpe* (176), *Ald-borough* (10), *Ald-gate*, *opp. to New-gate*.
52. *Fage, eye*; *eye*, *Eg-bert* (11).
53. *Eall, all*; *all*, *al-so*, *Al-fred* (67), *Al-bert* (11), *Al-win* (169).
54. *Efese, brim, brink*; *eaves of a house*, *Eves-ham* (*i. e. a dwelling on the bank or brink of a river*).

55. Elne, an *ell* ; originally the arm, el-bow (20).
56. Engle, an *Angle* ; one of the *Angli* ; hence, *Engle-land*, *Engel-land*, *England*.
57. Eorl, *brave man* ; earl.
58. Erian, to *plough, till* ; an ear of corn, earing (*Genesis* xlv., 6 ; *Exod.* xxxiv., 21).
59. Fadan, to *set in order* ; fad, fiddle-faddle, fidget.
60. Faran, to *go* ; fare, thorough-fare, fare-well, for-d, Chelms-ford, ferry, way-faring, field-fare.
61. Fealo, *yellow* ; fallow (*deer*).
62. Feoh, *value* ; fee.
63. Feorm, *food* ; farm.
64. Fian, to *hate* ; fiend, foe, feu-d, fie!
65. Fleot, a *river, a place where vessels float* ; Northfleet, Fleet Street.
66. Fon (*contr. fr. fengan*), to *take hold of* ; finger, fang.
67. Freon, to *love* ; fri-end, God-frey (79).
68. Frician, to *jump* ; frisk, freak, frog.
69. Fugol, *any bird* ; fowl, fowler.
70. Fulian, to *corrupt* ; foul, fil-th, de-file.
71. Fullian, to *whiten* ; fuller.
72. Fysan, to *hurry* ; fuss.
73. Gabban, to *scuff* ; jibe, jabber, gabble, gibberish.
74. Galan, to *sing* ; nightingale.
75. Gangan, to *go* ; gang, gangway.
76. Geard, *enclosure* ; yard, garden.
77. Geotan, to *pour* ; gut-t-er, gush.
78. Gerefa, a *governor* ; borough-reeve, sheriff, =shire-reeve ; (G. graf, an earl, landgrave).
79. God, *good* ; God, god in *god-speed*, i. e. *good speed*, gospel (=good-spell), (137).
80. Gorst, *furze, prickly bush* ; gorse, gorse-lettuce ; gooseberry (i. e. *prickly-berry*).
81. Grafan, to *dig* ; grave, engrave, groove.
82. Greet, *dust* ; grit, grate.
83. Had, *condition* ; hence the *affis head in Godhead, and hood*, as in *priesthood*.
84. Hafoc, *hawk*.—Laferc, *laverock*, *contr. to lark*.
85. Hals, *neck* ; halter.
86. Ham, *home, dwelling* ; Waltham (157) ; Hamp-ste:~
87. Hleaw, a *small hill, tract of ground rising gently* ; Hounslow (92), Wardlaw (161).
88. Hlidan, to *cover* ; lid, eye-lid.
89. Holm, *small island, low flat land* ; Axholm (1), Langholm.
90. Holt, *wood* ; Holt.
91. Hon (*contr. fr. hangian*), to *hang* ; hang, hinge, Stone-henge (i. e. *hanging rock*).
92. Hund, *dog* ; hound, hunt, Hounslow (87).
93. Hurst, *wood, forest* ; Bradhurst (17), Mid-hurst, Pens-hurst.
94. Hweorfan, to *turn* ; warp.
95. Hyth, a *port, haven* ; Hithe, Greenhithe.
96. Ing, a *pasture, meadow* ; Road-ing (118).
97. Lacnian, to *cure* ; leech (=doctor), horse-leech.
98. Læccan, to *seize* ; leech.
99. Ladan, to *lead* ; lead, ode, lode-star, lode-stone.
100. Leag, *field, meadow* ; lea, Elmsley.
101. Leasian, to *lie* ; leasing (*Psalms* 4).
102. Lit, a *ship* ; lighter, lighterman.
103. Lynis, *ash-tree* ; lynch-pin.
104. Mænan, to *think* ; mean, min-d.
105. Magan, to *be able* ; may, might, mai-n 'in might and main'.
106. Mengan, to *mix* ; mingle, a-mong, a-mongst.
107. Mere, *lake or marsh* ; Mere street ; Winder-mere.
108. Metsian, to *feed* ; meat, mess, mess-mate.
109. Mund, *defence* ; Ed-mund (50), Godmundham (79, 86).
110. Næsse, a *promontory, headland* ; ness in *Sheer-ness, Caithness*.
111. Nyther, *down* ; nether, nethermost, be-neath, under-neath, Nether-by (22), Nether-lands.
112. Nord, *north* ; Nor-wich, Norfolk, Nor-ton, Nor-ham.
113. Ræpan, to *bind* ; rap, rope.
114. Ræthe or rath, *soon* ; rath-er.
115. Rude, *red* ; rud-d-y.
116. Red, *counsel, wisdom* ; Ethel-red (3), Mild-red, Ælc-red (i. e. *each or all counsel*).
117. Rein, *clean* ; rin-se ; as *clean-se fr. clean*.
118. Red, a *reed* ; Red-bridge, Radford.
119. Rethra, *rower* ; Rother-hithe (95).

190. Ric, *dominion* ; bishop-ric ; in old English king-ric.
191. Rim, *number* ; rhyme.
192. Ripan, *to cut* ; reap.
193. Sceadan, *to divide* ; sca-t-t-er, scot-lot.
194. Sceapan, *to form, make* ; shape, shop, ship, land-skip ; *the affair-ship as in friendship*.
195. Scethan, *to injure* ; scath-less, un-scath-ed.
196. Sciran, *to cut* ; shear, shears, share, plough-share, shire, sheer, scar, score.
197. Scridan, *to clothe* ; shroud.
198. Scufan, *to thrust* ; scuff, scuffle, shove, shovel.
199. Seaxan, *Saxon* ; Es-sex, Sussex, Wes-sex, Middle-sex.
200. Seothan, *to boil* ; seethe, sod, soap-sud.
201. Slacian, *to be slow* ; slack, slug.
202. Slean (contr. fr. slegan), *to kill* ; slay, slaugh-ter, on-slaugh-t.
203. Sleafan, *to cover* ; sleeve, sleeveless (*a sleeveless errand is one which there is no cover or pretence for*).
204. Snican, *to creep* ; sneak, snake.
205. Soth, *true* ; for-sooth, sooth-say.
206. Sped, *success* ; speed, god-speed.
207. Spell, *tidings* ; go-spel (79).
208. Stan, *stone* ; Stan-ley (100).
209. Stede, *station, settlement* ; Hamp-stead, Fair-stead.
210. Steorfan, *to die* ; starve.
211. Stepan, *to raise* ; steep, step.
212. Stigan, *to ascend* ; stage, stairs, stye (*a rising on the eyelid*), story (*i. e. a flight of stairs*), stile (A. S. stigil) ; stirrup (= sti-rope, 113).
213. Stoc, *a place* ; Wood-stock.
214. Stow, *a place* ; Chep-stow (23), Walt-ham-stow (157, 86).
215. Sund, *narrow sea* ; the Sound, (Plymouth) Sound.
216. Suth, *south* ; Sus-sex (129), Sud-bury (10), Suf-folk, Sid-law (87).
217. Swart, *black* ; swarth-y.
218. Swifan, *to turn round* ; swiv-el.
219. Teon (contr. fr. teogan), *to draw* ; tug, tow, tea-m, tough, tigh-t.
220. Teotha, *tenth* ; tithe (*tenth part*).
221. Treowian, *to believe* ; trow, tro-th, true, tru-th, tru-st.
222. Twa, twegen, *two* ; twain, twm, be-twixt, twi-light, twice.
223. Tynan, *to wall in* ; town, -ton, Kings-ton, Ae-ton (1).
224. Ut, *out* ; utter, uttermost, out.
225. Wæd, *clothing* ; widow's-weeds.
226. Wæpen, *a weapon* ; wapentake.
227. Wald, *a wood* ; weald (*of Sussex*), Walt-ham, Walt-ham-stow (36, 144), Walden (39).
228. Wanian, *to decrease, fail* ; wane, wan, want.
229. Wealdan, *to govern* ; wield, Bretwalda (*a name assumed by the most powerful of the early Saxon Kings, meaning governor of the Britons*).
230. Weallan, *to spring up* ; well, Holywell.
231. Weard, *guard* ; ward, warden, guard, guardian.
232. Wenan, *to think* ; ween, over-ween-ing.
233. Wenden, *to go* ; wend, went, wander.
234. Weorthan, *to become* ; worth (*in woe worth the day, which means woe be to the day*).
235. Wesan, *to be* ; was, were.
236. Wic, *dwelling* ; Ain-wick, Green-wich, Hackney-wick.
237. Wiht, *a thing, creature* ; whit, wight, aught (= a whit), naught (*contracted to*) not ; naughty.
238. Witan, *to know* ; wit, wot, weet, wise, wis, witenagemote (*i. e. assembly of counsellors*).
239. Win, *war* ; Ed-win (50), God-win (79), Bald-win (6).
240. Wolcen, *cloud* ; welkin.
241. Worth, *a farm, village* ; Bridge-worth, Wal-worth (160).
242. Wriþan, *to bind, twist* ; writhe, wreathe, wreath.
243. Wyrþ, *root, herb* ; colewort.
244. Thincan, *to seem* ; me-thinks, me-thought (*me-thinks means to me seems ; methought, to me seemed. The English act. verb to think is another verb*).
245. Thirlian, *to pierce* ; drill, thirl, Thirl-wall, nos-tril (*in old English noethirle*), thrill.
246. Thorpe, *a village* ; Al-thorp (51), Bishop-thorpe.
247. Thringan, *to press* ; throng.
248. Thweor, *across* ; thwart, a-thwart.

219. DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN.

1. *Acer, sharp, pungent*; *ácríd, acridity, ácrimony.*
2. *Acuo, I make sharp*; *acúte, ácuemen.* — *Ácidus, sharp; ácid.*
3. *Aedes, a building*; *édifice, édifý* (i. e. *to build up by teaching*).
4. *Aequus, equal*; *equáality, equivalent* (497), *equidistant, equátor, infiquity, ádequate, equanimity* (15), *equilibrium* (*libra, a pound, or balance*).
5. *Aestus, the tide*; *éstuary, (that part of a river which the sea tide comes up).*
6. *Aevum, an age, life*; *coéval, priméval* (357), *longévity* (215).
7. *Ager, a field*; *agràrian, ágriculture* (61), *peregrination.*
8. *Agó, I do*; *actus, done*; *act, áctual, agent, ágitate, návigat* (267).
9. *Alius, other*; *álienús, another's*; *álienat*, *álien, álias, álibi.*
10. *Altus, high*; *áltitude, áltó-relievo* (*Italian*), *said of sculpture that stands out higher than the mass it is cut out of*; *basso-relievo, is cut into the mass, and is lower than the general surface.*
11. *Ambúlo, I walk*; *ámble, perámbulate, somnámbulist* (*somnus, sleep*).
12. *Amo, I love*; *ámiable, ámorous, ámity*. — *Amicus, a friend*; *ámicable, inímical.*
13. *Amplius, large*; *ámple, ámplify* (113), *ámplitude.*
14. *Angulus, a corner*; *ángle, tríangle* (478) *réctangle* (383), *rectángular.*
15. *Aníma, life*; *ánimate, inánimate, ánimál, ánimácul*. — *Anímus, mind*; *magnánimous* (221), *pusillánimous, (pusillus, little)*; *unánimous* (489).
16. *Annus, a year*; *ánnual, biénial* (38), *perénial, ánnivérýary* (508).
17. *Annúlus, a ring*; *ánnular* (*said of an eclipse of the sun, when from the moon's covering its central part, only the outer part is seen like a ring*).
18. *Antíquus, old*; *antíquity, antíquarian, antíquated, antíque.*
19. *Apérío, I open*; *apéríent, ápture, April* (*the month in which vegetation begins to open*).
20. *Appello, I call, summon*; *appeal, áppellation, áppellative.*
21. *Aqua, water*; *áqueous, aquátic, áqueduct* (101), *terráqueous* (467).
22. *Arbíter, an umpire, a witness*; *árbitr, árbitrary, árbitrate.*
23. *Arbor, a tree*; *árbour, árboreácent.*
24. *Ardeo, I burn*; *ársum, burnt*; *árdent, árdour, áron.*
25. *Aréna, sand*; *the Roman Amphitheatre was so called, because the floor was covered with sand to drink up the blood of the gladiators. We now use the term for any place in which a contest is going on.*
26. *Áro, I plough*; *árabile, inárabile.*
27. *Ars, artis, skill, art*; *art, ártist, ártífice* (113); *artíficial, inért.*
28. *Artus, a joint*; *articulate, inarticulate, árticle* (*a written bond*).
29. *Asper, rough*; *aspérity, exásperate, áspirat* (i. e. *rough breathing*).
30. *Audio, I hear*; *áudience, áudible, áudit, áuditor, áuditory.*
31. *Augeo, I increase*; *auctus, increased*; *áugment, áuction, áuthor.*
32. *Auxillum, help*; *áuxiliary.*
33. *Barba, a beard*; *bárber, barb, barbed, Barbaróssa* (i. e. *long-bearded*).
34. *Barbárus, foreign*; *bárbarous, barbárian, barbáric, barbáritý.*
35. *Beátus, blessed*; *beátitude, beátify* (113), *beátífic.*
36. *Bellum, war*; *rebel, rebéllion, bellígerent* (158).
37. *Béne, well*; *benévólent* (520), *benéfícant* (113), *benedíction* (86).
38. *Bis, twice*; *bisséxtile, biped, biséct* (413), *bi-valve* (*valvae, folding-doors*).
39. *Cádo, I fall*; *casum, fallen*; *cádence, cascade, casuál áccident, occásion, óccident*; *the west, because the sun falls down in that quarter.*
40. *Caedo, I cut, or kill*; *caesus, killed*; *incision, incisor, concise, párricide* (309), *súicide* (*sui, of one's self*); *régicide* (383), *infánticide* (118).
41. *Calculús, a pebble*; *calculat* (*from the old mode of reckoning by pebbles*), *calculáble, incalculáble.*

EXERCISE XLIX.

✎ Write out one other Derivative from 2, 4, 8, 14, 30, 37, 39, 40, 41:—

42. Candeo, *I burn*, or *become bright*; incendiary, candid, candle, candidate, (*because such formerly wore a white robe*), chandelier.
43. Cāpio, *I take*; captus, *taken*; cāptive, cāpacity, accēpt, concēption, anticipatē, recēptacle, suscep̄tible, percēptible, excēpt.
44. Cāput, cāpitis, *the head*; cāpital, capitol, cāptain, ehāpter, decāpitatē, precipitatē, précipice, cape (*i. e. a headland*).
45. Carbo, *coal*; carbon, carbonāceous, carborific (113), carbōnic.
46. Caro, carnis, *flesh*; cārnal, incārnate, cārnival (*feast just before Lent*).
47. Cāvus, *hollow*; cave, excavatē, cāvity, concave, cāvern.
48. Cēdo, *I give up*, or *I go*, cessus, *given up*; cede, intercede, cēssion, recede, proceed, antecēdent, concēde, secēde.—Cesso, *I stop*; incēssant.
49. Censeo, *I judge*, or *blame*; cēnsor, cēnsure, consōrious, cēnsurable.
50. Centrum, *centre*; centrifugal (149), centripetal (326), concētric.
51. Centum, *a hundred*; cēntury, cent, cēntipule (328), cēntūriōn.
52. Cerno, *I distinguish*, or *judge*; cretus, *distinguished*; discērn, discrēet, concern, decrēe, secrēte, secrētary.
53. Certus, *sure*; cērtain, cērtify (113), certificatē, incērtitude.
54. Charta, *paper*; chārter (*something written*), Magna Charta, cartōon (*a painting on paper*), chart, cārtridge.
55. Circus, *a circle*; circulate, circular, sēmicircle (416), cīrcus, circuit (107).
56. Cito, *I call*, or *rouse*, cite, exēlce, recite, incite, citatīōn, excitemēt.
57. Civis, *a citizen*; civil, civilize, civility, civic, cīvlian, city.
58. Clāmo, *I speak aloud*; exclāim, acclāim, reclāim, claim, clāmōr.
59. Clino, *I bend*; declīne, inclīne, reclīne, declēnsion.—Clivus, *a sloping ground*; acclivity, declivity.
60. Cognosco, *I learn, know*; cōgnizant, cōgnizable, rēcognize.
61. Cōlo, *I till*; cōlony, cūltivate, cūlture, hōrticulture (*hortus, a garden*).
62. Cōmes, *a companion*; count, concōmitant, cōnstable (*stabulum, a stable, an officer who first had charge of the horses and afterwards of the cavalry*).
63. Commōdus, *convenient*; commōdious, commōdity, incommōde.
64. Communis, *common*; commūnity, commūnicatē, excommūnicatē.
65. Cōpia, *plenty*; cōpious, cornucōpia (*cornu, a horn*).
66. Cor, cordis, *the heart*; cōrdial, accōrd, cōncord, discōrd, record.
67. Corpus, *the body*; corpōreal, corpse, corps, corpulent, incōrporate.
68. Crēdo, *I believe, trust*; crēdit, crēdible, crēdulous, credūlity, incrēdible, crēditor, creed, crēdence, crēdentials, discrēditable, accrēdit.
69. Creo, *I make, produce*; crēatē, crēator, crēatīōn, rēcreatē, rēcreatīōn.
70. Cresco, *I grow*; cretus, *grown*; increase, decrease, crēscent (*used of the moon when growing larger*), cōcrete, exērcēnce.
71. Crīmen, *a crime*; crīminal, crīminate, recrīminate.
72. Crux, *a cross*; crūsade, crūcifix, crūciform (142), exērcūciate, crūcible.
73. Cubo, *I bend*; succūmb, recūmbent, incūmbent.—Cūbit, (*cubitus, the elbow, the measure from the elbow to the end of the fingers*).
74. Culpa, *a fault*; cūlpable, excūlpatory. [*sine, without*].
75. Cura, *cure*; cure, curātor, cūrious, procūre, secūre, āccurate, sīnecure.
76. Curro, *I run*; cūrrēt, cūrricle, cōurse, cūrsory, concūr, incūr, occūr, recūr, excūrsion, precūrsor, succour.
77. Curvus, *crooked*; curve, curvilīnear (*linea, a line*), cūrvature.
78. Damno, *I condemn*; condēmn, dāmnatōry.
79. Dēbeo, *I owe*; dēbitum, *owed*; debt, indēbt, dēbt, dēbit.
80. Dēcem, *ten*; dēcimal, duo-dēcimal (102), dēcimate.
81. Dēcens, *becoming*; dēcent.—82. Dēcōrus, *becoming*; decōrum.
83. Dens, dentis, *a tooth*; dēntist, dēntal, indēnt, trīdent (478).
84. Densus, *thick*; dense, condēnsē, dēnsity.

EXERCISE L.

✎ Write out one other Derivative from 46, 50, 55, 57, 64, 66; three others from 43, 48, 53, 56, 58, 59, 61, 76, 81, 8:—

85. Deus, a god; déify (113), delty, delst, deodand (93).—Divinus, divina.
 86. Dico, I speak; dictus, spoken; diction, dictâte, contradict, indict, predict, édict, interdict, védict (509), malediction (222).
 87. Dies, a day; diurnal, dial, diary, meridian (236).
 88. Digtus, a finger; digit, digitate. [dign.]
 89. Dignus, worthy; dignity, dignify (113), condign, indignity, delgn, dis-
 90. Disco, I learn; disciple, discipline, disciplinarian.
 91. Divido, I divide; dividend, division, indivisible, individual.
 92. Dôceo, I teach; doctus, taught; docile, docility, doctor, doctrine.
 93. Do, I give; datus, given; dâtive, addîtion, édition, date, data.
 94. Dôno, I present; donation.—95. Dôleo, I grieve; condôle, dôlorous.
 96. Dôminus, a master; dômineer, dôminant, predôminate.
 97. Dômus, a house; dome, doméstic, dômicile.
 98. Dormio, I sleep; dôrmant, dôrmouse, dôrmitory.
 99. Dorsum, the back; dôrsal, endôrse, endôrser.
 100. Dûco, I draw; éducate.—101. Dûco, I lead; ductus, led; duke (a leader), addûce, condûce, indûce, producé, sedûce, indûct.
 102. Duo, two; dûel, dûal, duét, dûbious, duodécimal (80), indûbitable.
 103. Durus, hard, lasting; dûrable, endûre, indurate.
 104. Êdo, I eat; édible, ésculent.—105. Ego, I; égotist.
 106. Êmo, I take, buy; redéem, redémption, ransom, exémpt.
 107. Eo, I go; Itum, gone; exit, initial, initiate, trânsit, pérish, réiterate, ambition.—Iter, a journey; itinérant, itinérate, itinérary.
 108. Erro, I wander; érror, érratic, aberrâtion.
 109. Expêrior, I try; expérieence, expért, expériment, péril.
 110. Extra, without or beyond; extraôrdinary (294), extrâvagant (496).
 111. Fâcies, the face; fâcial, effâce, superfâcial.
 112. Fâcilis, easy; facility, facilitâte, difficulty, fâculty.
 113. Fâcio, I do or make; factus, done or made; fact, fâctious, bënëfactôr (37), mâléfactôr (226), mânufâctory (231), sâtisfy (407), affêct, infêct, certîfy (53), deficient, pèrfect, sâcrifice (397), factôtum (totus, all; said of one who does all kinds of things); crucify (72).
 114. Fallo, I deceive; fâllible, infâllible, false, fallacious.
 115. Fama, a report; fame, fâmous, infâmous.—116. Felis, a cat; feline.
 117. Fanum, a temple; fane, profâne (said of those cast forth from the temple), fanâtic, fanâticism (said of the priests).
 118. Fari, to speak; fans, speaking; infant, infêllable, nefârious, préface.
 119. Felix, happy; felicity, felicitâte, infelicitous.
 120. Ferrum, iron; ferruginous, ferrilite (Gr. lithos, a stone).
 121. Fêro, I carry; lâtus, carried; fértil, confér, defér, différ, infér, préfér, transfér, dilâte, oblâtion, relâte, translâte, circûmference (55).
 122. Ferveo, I boil; férvid, férvent, férvoir, effervéscent.
 123. Festus, joyful; fêstal, feast.—124. Fibra, a thread; fibre, fibrous.
 125. Fido, I trust; fides, faith; fidélity, infidel, confide, cónfidence, diffident, pèrfidy, afflance, defý.
 126. Figo, I fix; fixus, fixed; fixture, crucifix (72), affix, prefix.
 127. Filius, a son; filial, affiliate.
 128. Fendo, I strike; defend, offend, fender, fence.
 129. Finis, an end; finite, infinite, fine, final, finish, confine, define, dés-
 nite, definition, infinitive. [tive]
 130. Firmus, strong; firm, infirm, cónfirm, affirm, cónfirmâtion, affirma-
 131. Fingo, I form, or I pretend; feign, feint, fiction, figure, éffigy.
 132. Fiscus, treasury; fiscal, confiscate.
 133. Flagro, I blaze; flagrant.—Flamma, a blaze; flame, inflammation.

EXERCISE LI.

✎ Write out one other Derivative from 89, 94, 100, 103, 106, 110, 123; six others from 86, 101; twelve from 113, 121:—

134. Flo, *I blow*; flatus, *blown*; inflāte, inflātion, flātulent.
 135. Flecto, *I bend*; flexus, *bent*; flexible, deflect, inflect, reflect, circumflex, genuflexion (*genu, the knee*). [gate.
 136. Fligo, *I beat, or dash*; flictus, *beaten*; afflicto, conflict, inflict, profligate.
 137. Flos, floris, *a flower*; flōral, floricultural (61), flōrist, flōrid.
 138. Fluo, *I flow*; fluxum or fluctum, *flowed*; flūd, flūent, cōfluent, flūency, flūxion, afflux, reflux, influx, influence, superflūity, flūctuate.
 139. Fodio, *I dig*; fossum, *dug*; fossil, fosse (*a ditch, i. e. something dug*).
 140. Foemina, *a woman*; fēminine, effēminate, effēminacy.
 141. Fōlium, *a leaf*; fōliage, fōlio, portfōlio (349), trefoil (478).
 142. Forma, *shape*; form, fōrmal, fōrmula, cōform, noncōformity, defōrm, infōrm, perfōrm, refōrm, transfōrm, ūniform, mūltiform (260).
 143. Fortis, *strong*; fortify (113), fōrtitude, fort, fōrtress.
 144. Frango, *I break*; fractus, *broken*; frāgile, frall, refrāngible, frāction, frācture, frāgment, refrāct, infringe, refrāctory.
 145. Frater, *a brother*; frāternal, frātērnity, frāticide (40).
 146. Frigus, frigōria, *cold*; frigid, frigidit̄y, refrigerate. [front.
 147. Frons, frontis, *the forehead*; front, frontlet, frōntisplece, affrōnt, cōn-
 148. Fruo, *I enjoy*; fructum, *enjoyed*; fruit, frūctify, fruition.
 149. Fūgio, *I flee*; fūgitive, réfuge, centrífugal (50), sūbterfuge.
 150. Fungor, *I discharge*; fūction, fūctionary, defūct.
 151. Fundo, *I pour*; fusus, *poured*; fund, refūnd, cōfōund, fuse, refūse, cōfūse, diffūse, suffūse, transfūse, fūsible, funnel.
 152. Fundus, *foundation*; fundamēntal, profōund.
 153. Gēlu, frost; gēlid, congēal, gēlātinous, jēly.
 154. Gigno, *I beget*; gēnitus, begotten; primogenit̄ure (357), progenitor, indigēnous, gēnius, ingēnious, regēnerate. [gēnteel.
 155. Gens, gentis, *a nation*; gēntile.—Gentilis, *proper to a family*; gēntle,
 156. Gēnus, genēris, *a kind*; gēneral, gēneralize, genēric, gēnder, degēnerate. [father's side.
 157. Germen, *a shoot*; germ, gērminate, cousin-german (*a cousin on the*
 158. Gero, *I bear*; gestus, *borne*; belligerent (36), gēsture, gesticulate, congēstion, digēstion, suggēstion, vice-gērent (512).
 159. Glōbus, *a round body*; globe, glōbule, glōbular.
 160. Grādior, *I step*; gressus, *stepped*; grādus, *a step*; grade, gradātion, degrāde, rētrograde, grādual, progrēss, transgrēss, cōngress, ēgress.
 161. Grandis, *great*; grand, āggrandise, grandifloquēnt.
 162. Grātia, *favour*; grace, ingrātiate, cōgrātulate, grātūtous.
 163. Grātus, *thankful*; grāteful, grātitude, ingrātitude.
 164. Grāvis, *heavy*; grave, grāvity, grāvitation.
 165. Grex, grēgis, *a flock*; gregārius, āggregate, cōngregate. [hibit.
 166. Hābeo, *I hold, or have*; hābitus, *held*; hābit, hābitual, exhibīt, pro-
 167. Habito, *I dwell*; hābitātion, inhābit, cohābit. [hēsite.
 168. Haereo, *I stick*; haesus, *stuck*; adhēre, cohēre, adhēsion, cohēsive,
 169. Hērēs, hērēdis, *an heir*; herēditary, inhērīt, inhērītance.
 170. Hālo, *I breathe*; exhāle, exhālātion, inhāle.
 171. Haurio, *I draw*; haustus, *drawn*; exhāust, exhāustion, inēxhāustibla.
 172. Hōmo, *a man*; hūmānus, hūman; hōmicide (40), hūmane, hūmanit̄y.
 173. Hōreo, *I dread or shudder*; hōrrid, hōrrible, hōrror, abhōr, abhōrrent.
 174. Hospes, hospit̄is, *a guest*; hōspitable, hōspital, host.
 175. Hostis, *an enemy*; hōstile, hostilit̄y.
 176. Hūmeo, *I am wet*; hūmid, hūmidit̄y, hūmour. [hūmble, humilit̄y.
 177. Hūmus, *the ground*; hūmilis, *low*; inhūme, exhūme, poethūmous,
 178. Ignis, *fire*; igneous, ignite, ignition.

EXERCISE LII.

✎ Write out two other Derivatives from 135, 136, 138, 144, 147, 166, 168, 174; four from 142, 151, 160 :—

179. *Imago, an image*; *imagine, imagery, imagination*.
 180. *Impéro, I command*; *impérative, emperor, empire, imperious*.
 181. *Indico, I point out*; *indicatus, pointed out*; *indicate, indicative, index*.
 182. *Inferus, low*; *inferior, inferiority, infernal*.
 183. *Initium, beginning*; *initiate, initial, initiative*.
 184. *Insula, an island*; *péninsula (pene, almost), insular, insulate*. [*tégrity*.]
 185. *Integer, whole*; *integer (a whole number, not a fraction), intégral, in-*
 186. *ira, anger*; *ire, irascible*.
 187. *Jaceo, I lie down*; *adjacent, interjacent, subjacent*.
 188. *Jacio, I lay down, I throw*; *ejéct, injéct, dejéct, ábject, ádjective, ejá-*
culation, interjéction, conjécture, objéct, projectile, rejéct, subject.
 189. *Júdex, júdiceis, a judge*; *judicial, júdicature, júdicious, préjudice*.
 190. *Jugum, a yoke*; *súbjugate, conjugate, conjugal*.
 191. *Jungo, I join*; *junctus, joined*; *júction, conjúction, júuncture, ád-*
junct, súbjunctive, joint, adjoin, subjoin.
 192. *Jus, juris, law, right*; *Juro, I swear*; *júry, jústice, jústify (113),*
ínjury, pérjury, júrisdiction (86), júrisprudence.
 193. *Juvenis, young*; *juvenile, júnior*.
 194. *Labor, work*; *lábor, eláborate, láboratory*.
 195. *Labor, I slip*; *lapsus, slipped*; *collápsé, elápsé, relápsé*.
 196. *Lac, lactis, milk*; *lácteal, láctary, lactéscent*.
 197. *Lapis, lapidis, a stone*; *lápidary, dilápidate*.
 198. *Látus, broad*; *látitude*.—For 'látus,' *carried, see Fero*.
 199. *Látus, lateris, a side*; *láteral, quadriláteral (374), equilláteral*.
 200. *Laus, laudis, praise*; *laud, laudatory, laudable*.
 201. *Laxo, I loose*; *lax, reláx, láxity, láxative, relaxátion*.
 202. *Légo, I send*; *I impute, I bequeath*; *légate, délegate*; *allége, légacy*.
 203. *Légo, I choose*; *I gather, I read*; *lectus, chosen, &c., eléct, neglect,*
elegance, inéligible, seléct, intellect, intélligent, colléct, récollect,
collece, dílligence, sácrilege (397), lécture, lésson, illégible.
 204. *Lévo, I lift*; *lévis, light*; *élevate, lévity, relieve*.
 205. *Lex, légis, a law*; *licítus, lawful*; *légal, legitimate, lícence, illicit*.
 206. *Liber, free*; *liberty, liberate, deliver, libertine, liberal*.
 207. *Liber, a book*; *libellus, a little-book*; *library, librárian, líbel, lídellous*.
 208. *Ligo, I bind*; *ligament, oblige, religion, league, allégiance, líable*.
 209. *Limes, limitis, a bound*; *limit, unlimited, lílimitable*.
 210. *Lingua, a tongue*; *linguist, language, lingual*. [*oblique*.]
 211. *Linquo, I leave*; *licítus, left*; *relínquish, rélic, rélict, delínquent*.
 212. *Liqueo, I melt*; *líquid, líquefy, líquor, líquidity*.
 213. *Litera, a letter*; *líteral, líterature, líterary, lílliterate*.
 214. *Locus, a place*; *locál, locáte, dílocate, collocátion, locomótion (259)*.
 215. *Longus, long*; *elóngate, longévity (6), lóngitude*. (*The ancients thought*
the earth to extend further from east to west than from north to south.)
 216. *Lóquor, I speak*; *locútus, spoken*; *loquácity, soliloquy (433), collóquial,*
éloquent, elocútion, circumlocútion, ventríloquist (venter, the belly),
obloquy. [*collúsive, delúsive, lúdicrous, líllúson*.]
 217. *Lúdo, I play*; *lulus, played*; *prélude, állude, élude, delúde, ínterlude*.
 218. *Luna, the moon*; *lúnar, lúnatic, súblunary*.
 219. *Luo, I wash*; *ablútion, dílúte, dílúvial, antedílúvian*.
Lustrum, a purifying; *lustrátion, líllustrate, lístre*.
 220. *Lux, lucis, light*; *lúcid, pellúcid, elúcidate*.—*Lumen, light*; *lúminous*.
 221. *Magnus, great*; *mágnitude, magníficent (113), magnánímous (15)*.
Máior, greater; *máior, májority, májesty, mayor*.
Mágister, a master; *magistrate, magisterial*.

EXERCISE LIII.

✎ Write out two other Derivatives from 179, 191, 194, 202, 204, 205, 206, 208, 214, 217, 220; four others from 188, 203, 221:—

222. *Mālus, bad*; *māladý, maltreat, malcontent, malice, malignant.*
 223. *Mamma, a breast*; *mammá, mammália, mammíferous (121).*
 224. *Mando, I bid, I give in charge*; *demánd, remánd, commánd, mán-date (93), commend.*
 225. *Māneo, I stay*; *remain, rémnant, mánslon, pérmanent.*
 226. *Mānus, the hand*; *mānuscript (411), mánual, mánacle, emāncípate (43), maintain (462).*
 227. *Māre, the sea*; *marine, máritime, máriner, súbmarine.*
 228. *Māter, a mother*; *matérnal, mátron, mátricide (41), matriculate.*
 229. *Māturus, ripe*; *mátur, máturate, ímmature, prémature.*
 230. *Mēdius, middle*; *médium, mediócity, médiator, ímmédiate, Méditer-ránean (467) (as being surrounded by land), meridian (87) (here me-ri-dian is equivalent to meridian, the r being used to avoid the two d's).*
 231. *Mēdeor, I heal*; *médical, médecine, rémedy, remédial.*
 232. *Mel, mellis, honey*; *mellífuous (138), mellífuous.*
 233. *Mélior, better*; *méliorate, ameliorátion.*
 234. *Mémor, mindful*; *mémory, mémorable, mémoir, commémorate, me-mórial, memorándum, remémber.*
 235. *Mendax, false*; *mendácity, mendácious.*
 236. *Mens, mentis, the mind*; *méntal, véhément (501).*
 237. *Méreo, I deserve*; *méritus, deserved*; *mérit, demerit, meritórious.*
 238. *Mergo, I plunge*; *mersus, plunged*; *ímmérse, ímmérslon, súbmérge, emérgecy.*
 239. *Merx, merces, merchandise*; *cómmerce, mérchant, mércer, market.*
 240. *Metior, I measure*; *mensus, measured*; *mensúra, a measure*; *mete, measure, ménsuration, comménsurate, íncomménsurable.*
 241. *Migro, I change my abode*; *migráte, migrátion, émigrate, ímmigrate.*
 242. *Miles, militis, a soldier*; *mílitary, mílíta, mílítant.*
 243. *Mille, a thousand*; *míllénnum (16), míllion (a thousand thousand); míle (the Roman míle was a thousand paces), mílleped (324). [nence.*
 244. *Im, -E, -Pro, -Mineo, I hang*; *próminent, éminent, ímminent, prómi-*
 245. *Minister, a servant*; *mínister, mínisty, admínister.*
 246. *Minuo, I lessen*; *minutus, lessened*; *mínor, mínus, less*; *mínority, mínute, míniature, díminish, díminútion, díminútive.*
 247. *Mirus or mirābilis, wonderful*; *míracle, admíre, admírable, márvellous.*
 248. *Misceo, I mingle*; *míxtus, míngled*; *míx, míscéllany, prómiscúous.*
 249. *Miser, wretched*; *míser, mísery, míserable, commíserate.*
 250. *Mitto, I send*; *missus, sent*; *míssion, míssionary, míssile, émíssary, admít, commít, íntermit, permít, remít, transmít, prómise, admíssion.*
 251. *Módus, a measure or manner*; *mode, mood, módfy, moderate, mó-del, módesty, ímmódest, commódfous, commódfity, íncommóde.*
 252. *Mola, a millstone*; *neal sprinkled on the sacrífice*; *mólar, ímmolate, emólument (originally the miller's toll, but now any profits). [mint.*
 253. *Móneo, I warn, remind*; *mónítor, mónumént, admónish; móney,*
 254. *Mons, a mountain*; *dísmóunt, surmóunt, prómontory, móntem.*
 255. *Monstro, I shew*; *monstratus, shewed*; *demonstrate, remónstrate.*
 256. *Mors, mortis, death*; *mórtal, mórtality, ímmórtal.*
 257. *Mordeo, I bite*; *morsus, bitten*; *remórse, remórseless, mórsel.*
 258. *Mos, moris, a manner*; *móral, mórality, demóralize. [emotion.*
 259. *Móveo, I move*; *mótus, móved*; *móveable, móvement, commótion,*
 260. *Multus, many*; *múltitude, múltíply (338), múltíform (142).*
 261. *Múnio, I fortify*; *múnitus, fortífied*; *múnítion, ammúnítion.*
 262. *Múnus, munéris, a gift or office*; *remúnérate, múnífcent (113), mu-nícípál (43), ímmúnity.*
 263. *Musa, a song*; *music, the musés, músical, muséum, amuse.*
 264. *Múto, I change*; *mútáble, ímmútáble, mutátion, commúte, transmúte.*

EXERCISE LIV.

Write out two other Derivatives from 224, 225, 226, 231, 239, 241, 44, 245, 247, 253, 255, 258, 259, 262, 263, 264; four from 250, 251 :-

265. Nātus, *born*; nātive, nātal, nātion, cōgnate, innate.
 266. Nātūra, *nature*; nātural, supernātural, nāturalize, nāturalist.
 267. Navis, *a ship*; nāvny, nāval, circumnāvigate.—Nauta, *a sailor*; nautical, nautilus.—268. Ne, *not*, nefārious (118).
 269. Necto, *I tie*; nexus, *tied*; connēct, annex.
 270. Nēgo, *I deny*; negātus, *denied*; negātion, négative, rénegade.
 271. Neuter, *not either*; neutral, neutrality, neutralize. [the blacks.]
 272. Nīger, *black*; négro, Nīger (*the river going through the country of*
 273. Nōceo, *I injure*; innocent, nōxious, obnōxious, innōcuus.
 274. Nōmen, *a name*; nōminal, denōminate, nōminative, ignominy, noun.
 275. Non, *not*; nōnsense, nōndescript (411), nonconformist.
 276. Norma, *a rule, a pattern*; nōrmal, enōrmous, enōrmity.
 277. Nosco, *I learn, I know*; nōtus, *known*; nōta, *a mark*; note, nótale, nótify (113), denote, notion, noble, ignoble, cognizance, recognize.
 278. Nōvem, *nine*; November.—279. Nōvus, *new*; nōvel, innovate, nō-
 280. Nox, noctis, *night*; noctūrnal, équinox (4), équinoctial. [vice.
 281. Nubo, *I marry*; nuptial, connūbial. [metary.
 282. Nūmerus, *a number*; nūmeral, innūmerable, enūmerate, supernū-
 283. Nuntio, *I tell*; annōunce, denōunce, pronōunce, renōunce, nuncio.
 284. Nūtrio, *I nourish*; nutritus, *nourished*; nūtriment, nūtritive, nurse.
 285. Oblivio, obliviónis, *forgetfulness*; oblivion, obliivious.
 286. Octo, *eight*; octavus, *eighth*; octave, octávo, October.
 287. Ōculus, *the eye*; ōculist, ōcular, inoculate (*as a tree with a bud, or a person with small-pox*).
 288. Ōdor, *scent*; odour.—289. Officium, *duty*; ōffice, ōfficer. [all.]
 290. Omnis, *all*; omniscience (410), omniprésent, omnibus (*a carriage for*
 291. Opto, *I wish, or choose*; ōption, ōptative, adopt.
 292. Ōpus, opēris, *a work*; ōperate, co-operation, ōperative, ōpera.
 293. Orbis, *a circle*; orb, orbit, orbicular, exorbitant. [nate.
 294. Ordo, ordinis, *order*; ōrdinal, ordain, ōrdinary, inōrdinate, subōrdi-
 295. Origo, *the beginning*; ōrigin, original, aboriginal, originate.
 296. Ōrior, *I rise*; ortus, *risen*; ōrient, ōriental (*the east, where the sun rises*), abōrtive.
 297. Ōro, *I speak, entreat*; ōral, ōrator, ōracle, adōre, inēxorable.
 298. Ōvum, *an egg*; ōval, oviparous (305).
 299. Pāgus, *a village*; pāgan (*the villagers remaining idolators after the people of the towns had become Christians*), pāganism, péasant.
 300. Pallium, *a cloak*; pall, pālliative.
 301. Palpo, *I touch*; pālpable, pālpitate. [stretched out], encōmpassa.
 302. Pando, *I spread*; passus, *spread*; expānd, expānse, pace (*the foot being*
 303. Par, *equal*; peer, pāritiy, dispāritiy, dispārage, compāre, compārisōn.
 304. Pāreo, *I appear*; appārent, transpārent, apparitiōn.
 305. Pārio, *I beget*; pārent, oviparous (298), viviparous (518).
 306. Pāro, *I get ready*; prepare, preparation, repair, impair.
 307. Pars, partis, *a part*; pārtiy, pārticiple, pārticle, pārtial, participate, particular, bipartite (38), parse, impārt, depārt.
 308. Pasco, *I feed*; pāsture, pāstor, repāst, antepast.
 309. Pāter, *a father*; patērnal, pātrimony, pātron, patrician.
 310. Pātria, *father-land, native country*; pātriot, pātriotic, expātriate.
 311. Pātor, *I suffer*; pātient, impātience, pāssion, pāssive.
 312. Pauper, *poor*; pāuper, pāuperize, pāuperism, poverty.
 313. Pax, pacis, *peace*; pacific, pacify, peace, peaceable.
 314. Pecco, *I sin*; péccant, impéccable, peccadillo, peccāvi.
 315. Pectus, pectōris, *the breast*; pēctoral, expēctorate. [pécuate.
 316. Pēcūnia, *money*; pecūniary.—Peculium, *private property*; pecūliar,

EXERCISE LV.

✎ Write out one other Derivative from 284, 292, 306, 313, 316; two from 265, 269, 274, 279, 283, 294, 307, 311; four from 277, 288, 289, 290 :—

317. *Pello, I drive*; pulsus, *driven*; expél, expúlsion, compél, dispél, impél, repél, repéal, propel, pulse, repúlse.
318. *Pendeo, I hang*; pëndulum, pëndant, pënding, appëndage, appëndix, depënd, impënd, perpendicular, propénsity, suspënd.
319. *Pendo, I weigh, I pay*; pensus, *weighed*; expënd, expénse, dispénse, dispensary, compénsate, récompense, pénsion, pénsive, compendium.
320. *Pêne, almost*; peninsula (184), antepenúltimate (486), penúmbra (487).
321. *Pênëtro, I pierce*; penetratus, *pierced*; pénétrate, impénétrable.
322. *Penúria, want*; pénury, penúrious, penuriousness.
323. *Persóna, a person*; përsónate, përsónify, përsónal.
324. *Pes, pëdis, the foot*; pëdal, pëdëstrian, pedestal, expedíte, impède, quádrupe (374), aliped (ala, a wing; wingfooted like the bat).
325. *Pestis, the plague*; pest, pestilence, pestiferous (121), pester.
326. *Pëto, I ask, I seek*; pëtitus, *asked*; pëtition, compëtitör, repëat, impetus, centripetal (50), appëtite, appëtency.
327. *Pingo, I paint*; pictus, *painted*; picture, picturesque, pigment, depict, Picts (people who painted themselves).
328. *Pilo, I steal*; pillage, compilation.—329. *Piscis, a fish*; piscatory.
330. *Pius, religious*; pious, piety, impiety, pity.
331. *Pláceo, I please*; plácid, plácable, complácence, complaisant.
332. *Planta, a plant*; plantátion, displánt, replánt, supplánt, transplánt.
333. *Plaudo, I make a noise by clapping*; appláud, appláuse, pláudit.
334. *Plebs, the common people*; plebéian.
335. *Plénus, full*; plénitude, plénary, plenipotentiary (350), replénish.
336. *Pleo, I fill*; pletus, *filled*; compléte, repléte, supplý, complément.
337. *Plecto, I twist*; plexus, *twisted*; cómplex, perplex, simple (*the x lost*).
338. *Pileo, I fold, bend*; plicatus, *folded*; pliable, applý, complicate, duplicate, duplicity, explicite, implicate, replý, súpliant (*one praying, from having his knees bent under him*); súrplice, triple (478).
339. *Plôro, I seek, complain*; plôratus, *sought*; deplôre, explôre, implôre.
340. *Plumbum, lead*; plúmmet, plúmber.—341. *Plúma, a feather*; plume.
342. *Plus, pluris, more*; plúral, plupërfect, nónplus, súrplus.
343. *Pœna, punishment, remorse*; pénal, repëntant, pénitent, pénance.
344. *Pôlio, I polish*; pôlitus, *polished*; pôlisher, polite, politeness.
345. *Pondus, a weight*; pound, ponderous, ponder, prepönderate.
346. *Pöno, I place*; pôsitus, *placed*; post, position, appöposition, compöse, compound, compönent, cómpost, depöse, depönent, dispöse, impöse, préposition, suppöse, júxta-position (*júxta, next to*), prepositus.
347. *Pöpulus, the people*; pöpular, pöpulous, públic, péople, públish.
348. *Porta, a door*; pórtal, pórtico, pórt-hole.—Portus, a harbour; port.
349. *Portô, I carry*; pórtör, pórtable, port, *the carriage of the body*; depört, export, import, report, support, transpört, portfólio (141).
350. *Possum, I am able*; potens, *powerful*; pössible, omnipotent (290).
351. *Post, after*; pósterior, pósterity, postdilúvian (diluvium, a flood), postmeridian (meridies, noon), postpone (346), postscript (411).
352. *Postúlo, I demand*; postúlatus, *demanded*; póstulate, expóstulate.
353. *Præda, plunder*; prey, prédatory, dépredation.
354. *Prëcor, I pray*; déprecate, imprecate, precárius (*depending on others*).
355. *Prehendo, I take hold*; apprehënd, apprehénsive, comprehend.
356. *Prëmo, I press*; pressus, *pressed*; express, impress.
357. *Primus, first*; primary, primitive, priméal (6), primórdial (ordior, *I begin*); primrose (*one of the first flowers in spring*).
358. *Princeps, first*; prince, principal, principálicity, principle.
359. *Privo, I take away*; deprive, deprívation, privy, privacy, private.

EXERCISE LVI.

✎ Write out one other Derivative from 321, 352; two from 318, 319, 324, 326, 331, 336, 337, 347, 354; four from 338, 346, 349, 350, 355, 356:—

360. *Præbo, I try, make good*; *probatus, tried, proved*; *probation, approbation, reprobation, probable, probe, probity.* [imate.]
 361. *Præpe, near*; *proximus, nearest*; *propinquity, proximity, approach.*
 362. *Præprios, fit, one's own*; *præper, property, propriety, appropriate.*
 363. *Puer, a boy*; *puerile.*—364. *Pugil, a boxer*; *pugillist, pugilism.*
 365. *Pugna, a fight*; *pugnacious, repugnance, impugn, oppugn.*
 366. *Pungo, I prick*; *punctus, pricked*; *pungent, puncture, punctuation, punctual, expunge (referring to the obliteration of writing on wax).*
 367. *Purgo, I cleanse*; *purgatus, cleansed*; *purge, purgatory, expurgate.*
 368. *Puto, I prune, I think*; *pütatus, thought*; *compute, amputate, depüte (to cut off from the main body)*; *député, dispüte, impüte, repute.*
 369. *Putris, rotten*; *pütrid, putrefy (113), putrefaction.*
 370. *Quæro, I ask*; *quæsitus, asked*; *query, quest, quix, question, acquire, exquisite, inquire, inquest, inquisition, perquisite, require.*
 371. *Qualis, such as*; *quallify, disqualify, quality.* [sion]
 372. *Quassus (cussus in derivatives), shaken*; *concussion, discuss, percuss.*
 373. *Quies, quietis, rest*; *quiet, quietude, quiescent, acquiesce, réquiem.*
 374. *Quatuor, four*; *quart, quarter, quadrant, quadrátic, quadrangle (14).*
 375. *Quinque, five*; *quinquennial (16), quintuple (38), quintessence.*
 376. *Rádus, a ray*; *rádius, radiate, irradiate, radianca.*
 377. *Rádix, a root*; *rádsh, eradicate, radical, radicle (a small root).*
 378. *Rádo, I scrape*; *rásus, scraped*; *rase, erase, rázor, rásher, abráda.*
 379. *Rápio, I snatch*; *raptus, snatched*; *rápine, rapacious, rapacity, rapt, rapture, rávish, ráven, rávenous, rávage.*
 380. *Rarus, thin, not close*; *rare, rarity, rarefy (113), rarefaction.*
 381. *Rátio, reason*; *rátional, irrational, rationál, ratiócination.*
 382. *Rátus, fixed*; *rátify (113), ratification, rátion, rate.*
 383. *Régo, I rule*; *rectus, ruled, or straight*; *régal, regulation, régular, régency, régime, régiment, réctor, réctify, correct, direct, erect, corrigible, rectilinear, régicide (40), interrégnum, régnant.*
 384. *Répo, I creep*; *réptile.*
 385. *Réte, a net*; *reticulate, réticule, rétina (a part of the eye like net-work).*
 386. *Rídeo, I laugh*; *deride, derision, risible, ridicule, ridiculous.*
 387. *Rígeo, I am cold, or stiff*; *rigid, rigidity, rigor, rigorous.*
 388. *Rígo, I water*; *irrigate, irrigation, irriguous.*
 389. *Rívus, a river*; *rivulet, rival, derive.*
 390. *Róbur, an oak, strength*; *robust, corroborate, corroborator.* [rat, &c.]
 391. *Ródo, I gnaw*; *corróde, corrosion, eróde, rodéntia (gnawing animals).*
 392. *Rógo, I ask*; *rogátus, asked, ordained*; *interrogate, ábrogate, prorógue.*
 393. *Róta, a wheel*; *rotátion, rote, roast.*—*Rotundus, round*; *rotúndity.*
 394. *Rumen, the cud*; *rúminate (to think one's thoughts over again).*
 395. *Rumpo, I break*; *ruptus, broken*; *rupture, eruption, abrupt, corrupt, bankrupt.* [ment, érudita.]
 396. *Rus, ruris, the country*; *rústic, rural.*—*Rudis, untaught*; *rude, rúdi.*
 397. *Sácer, sacred*; *sácrament, sácrifice (113), sácrilege (lego, I steal), consecrate, desecrate, exécrate, sácerdotal, séxton, contr. fr. sácristan.*
 398. *Ságax, wise*; *sagácity, presage.*
 399. *Sal, salt*; *saline, sál-volatile (volo, I fly).*
 400. *Sallo, I leap*; *saltum, to leap*; *sálly, sálmon (this fish leaps very high), sálient, assáil, assáult, consúlt, consúl, counsél, désultory, exúlt.*
 401. *Sálus, sálutis, safety*; *sálutary, sálute.*
 402. *Salvus, safe*; *sálvátion, sálvour, sálvo, sálvable, salve.*
 403. *Sanctus, holy*; *sanctify (113), sanctity, sanctimonious, sánction.*
 404. *Sanguis, blood*; *sánguinary, sangúineous, sánguine, consanguinity.*
 405. *Sánus, sound*; *sane, insáne, insanity, sánative, sanatórium.*

EXERCISE LVII.

☞ Write out one other Derivative from 361, 365, 398, 401; two from 360, 367, 368, 376, 389, 395, 403; four from 370, 383, 392, 396, 397, 400:—

406. Sapiro, *I taste*, or *I am wise*; insipid, sápid, sáplent, sáplence, savour.
 407. Satis, *enough*; sate, sátiare, sáture, satiety, sátiety (113), insátiabile.
 408. Scando, *I climb*; ascend, ascension, descend, transcend, scan.
 409. Scindo, *I cut*; scissus, *cut*; rescind, scissors, abscission.
 410. Scio, *I know*; scitus, *known*; science, conscience, conscious, préscience.
 411. Scribe, *I write*; scriptus, *written*; scribe, scribble, scripture, describe, description, superscribe, transcribe, postscript, rescript.
 412. Scrutor, *I search*; scrutatus, *searched*; scrutiny, scrutator, inscrutable.
 413. Seco, *I cut*; sectus, *cut*; sect, section, sécant, sector, segment, insect (*having their bodies deeply cut*), disséct, dissector, intersect, bisect (38).
 414. Sequor, *I follow*; secutus, *followed*; séquence, conséquence, séquel, subsequent, execute, persecute, prosecute, consécutive, sécond.
 415. Sædeo, *I sit*; sessum, *to sit*; sedán, sédentry, sédiment, sedate, sesión, assés, preside, consider, subsíde, superséde, assiduous, insáldious.
 416. Sæmi, *half*; semicircle, semidiámeter, semivówel, semibrève.
 417. Sænex, *old*; sénator, sénate, sénior, sénile.
 418. Sentio, *I feel, I think*; sensus, *felt*; insénsate, séntient, scent, sènsual, sèntence (*so many words as convey a thought*), assent, consent, dissent, resént. [pulchre.
 419. Septem, *seven*; septennial (17).—420. Sepultus, *buried*; sépulture, sé-
 421. Sero, *I put, I set*; séries, sermon, assért, desert, exért, insért. Sèmen, seminis, *seed*; séminal, seminary, disseminate.
 422. Servio, *I obey*; serve, sérvant, servitor, sérvile.
 423. Servo, *I keep*; servatus, *kept*; conserve, observe, observátion, préserve, resérve. [star].
 424. Sex, *six*; séxtant.—425. Sidus, *a star*; sidereal, Georgium sidus (*George's*
 426. Signum, *a sign*; signal, énsign, signify (113), significant, insignia.
 427. Simul, *at the same time*; simultanéous, asséemble.—Similis, *like*; similar, assimilate, stimulare, fac-simile (113), dissemble.
 428. Sisto, *I stop*; assist, consist, exist, insist, persist, resist, subsist.
 429. Socius, *a companion*; sócial, society, associé, dissóciate.
 430. Sol, *the sun*; sólar, parasól, sólstice (*where the sun stops in its course, going no further north or south; our summer solstice is the 21st of June, the winter the 21st of December*).
 431. Solidus, *firm*; sólid, consolidare, solidify (113), sólder.
 432. Solor, *I comfort*; sólace, consóle, consolatory, consolation.
 433. Solus, *alone*; sole, sólitude, sólo, soliloquy (216), désolate.
 434. Solum, *the ground*; soil. [dissolve.
 435. Solvo, *I loosen*; solutus, *loosened*; solve, solútion, sólvent, absolve,
 436. Sonus, *sound*; sonorous, consonant, dissónant, únison (489), sound.
 437. Spargo, *I scatter*; sparsus, *scattered*; aspérse, dispérse, interspérse.
 438. Specio, *I see, or I look*; spectus, *seen*; spécies (*a kind distinguished from others*), spécial, spécimen, spécious (*that which looks good*), spéculate, spectátor, spectacles, despise, inspect, perspective, retrospect.
 439. Spero, *I hope*; speratus, *hoped*; despáir, desperate, desperado.
 440. Spiro, *I breathe*; spirit, aspire, conspire, expire, inspire, respire.
 441. Spondeo, *I promise*; sponsus, *promised*; spónsor, respónd, spouse.
 442. Sterno, *I lay flat*; stratus, *laid flat*; stratum, prostrate, consternation.
 443. Stilla, *a drop*; still, distil, instil.—444. Stirps, *a root*; extirpate.
 445. Stimulus, *a spur*; stimulare, stimulant, stimulus.
 446. Stinguo, *I mark, prick*; extinguish, distinguish, instinct, extinct.
 447. Sto, *I stand*; státum, *stood*; státute, state, státue, státute, státioner, stáble, constant, distant, éxtant, instant, obstacle, constitúte, institúte, substitute, superstition, armistice (*arms, arms*), intérstice.

EXERCISE LVIII.

✎ Write out one other Derivative from 406, 410; two from 408, 429, 433, 438, 441, 443, 427; four from 407, 411, 414, 415, 426, 428, 435, 440, 446; twelve from 411, 447:—

448. Stringo, *I draw tight*; strictus, *drawn tight*; strict, constrictor, stringent. [trúction, instruct, obstruct, destroy.]
449. Struo, *I build*; structus, *built*; strúcture, construct, constrúe, des-
450. Suadeo, *I advise*; suásum, *advised*, suáson, dissuáde, persuáde.
451. Substantia, *a substance*; súbstantive, subántiate, transubántiation.
452. Sum, *I am*; esse, *to be*; (ens, *entis, being*); futurus, *about to be*; essence, éntity, absent, present, represent, pótent (350), interest, fúture.
453. Summus, *the highest*; súmmit, sum, súmmary, consummate.
454. Sûmo, *I take*; assûme, consume, presume, súmptuous.
455. Surgo, *I rise*; surrectum, *risen*; surge, însurgént, resurrección.
456. Taceo, *I am silent*; tãcit, tãcitur, taciturnity.
457. Tango, *I touch*; tactus, *touched*; tãgible, tãgént, cõtact, contãgion, contagious, contingent, contiguous, intégrity, attãch, attãin.
458. Tego, *I cover*; tectus, *covered*; intégument, detect, protect.
459. Temno, *I despise*; contemn, contempt, contemptible, contemptuous.
460. Tempus, *temporis, time*; tense, témporal, extempore, contemporáry, témporize.—Temporo, *I season*, *I moderate*; témpor, témperate.
461. Tendo, *I stretch*, *I bend*; tentus, *stretched*; tend, tense (*rights*), téndon, tent, attend, disténd, inténd, subténd, superinténd, porténd.
462. Teneo, *I hold*; tentum, *held*; ténant, ténable, tenacious, tenement, ténét, ténor, téndril, abtãin, contãin, cõtinent, continue, detãin, entertãin, obtãin, pertain, pertinent, retãin, rétinue, sustãin.
463. Tento, *I try*; tempt, attempt.—464. Tepeo, *I am warm*; tepid.
465. Terminus, *a boundary, or an end*; term, términal, términate, contérminous, détérmine, extérminate, indéterminable.
466. Tero, *I rub*; tritus, *rubbed*; triturate, cõttrite, attrition, déttriment.
467. Terra, *the earth*; terréstrial, térrace (*raised earth*), térrier, intér.
468. Terreo, *I frighten*; térror, térrible, térrify (113), detér. [test.
469. Testis, *a witness*; test, téstament, téstate, attést, contest, detést, pro-
470. Texo, *I weave*; textus, *woven*; téxture, text, cõttext, téxt-hand.
471. Timeo, *I fear*; tímíd, timidity, intimidate, tímorous.
472. Torpeo, *I am benumbed*; torpid, torpédo (*a kind of eel that benumbs by giving an electric shock*).
473. Torreo, *I parch*; tostus, *parched*; tórrid, toast. [tört, retort.
474. Torqueo, *I twist*; tortus, *twisted*; tórtuous, tórture, torment, dis-
475. Traho, *I draw*; tractus, *drawn*.—Tracto, *I handle*; treat, tract, tráctable, trace, ábstract, attrãct, contrãct, distrãct, subtrãct, subtrahend.
476. Trãdo, *I deliver over, or up*; tradition, traditional, tráitor.
477. Trëmo, *I shake*; trémor, trémulous, trémble, trémëndous.
478. Tres, *tris, three*; trëble, trëfoil (141), trident (83), triennial (17), trinity, triséct (413).
479. Tribuo, *I give*; tribute, attribute, contríbuté, distribute, retribútíon.
480. Tribus, *a division of people*; tribe, tribune, tribunal.
481. Trúdo, *I thrust*; trusus, *thrust*; abstrúe, detrúde, intrúde, protrúde.
482. Tueor, *I see, or I protect*; tutus, *safe*; tuition, tutor, tütelar.
483. Túmeo, *I swell*; túmor, tomb, túmid, túmefy, túmult, cõtumely.
484. Túber, *a swelling*; túbercle, túberose, protúberant.
485. Turba, *a bustle, a crowd*; túrbid, túrbulent, distúrb, pertúrb.
486. Ultra, *beyond*; ultérior, *farther*; ultimus, *farthest*; últra-liberal, ultérior, úlimate, penúlt (*the last syllable but one*), ultímátum.
487. Umbra, *a shade*; úmbrage, úmbrágeous, úmbrëlla (*originally used as a shade for the sun*), penúmbra (*the partial deprivation of light in an eclipse*).
488. Unguo, *I anoint*; unctus, *anointed*; únguent, únctuous, únction.
489. Unus, *one*; únion, únity, úniform (142), únique, únicorn (85), tríune.

EXERCISE LIX.

✎ Write out one other Derivative from 431, 451, 460, 467, 468, 482; two from 448, 450, 454, 455, 457, 464, 468, 469, 474, 481, 483, 485; four from 449, 452, 458, 461, 465, 479; eight from 462, 475.—

490. Urbs, *a city*; urbáne, urbánity, súburba.
 491. Uro, *I burn*; ustus, *burnt*; combústion, combústible, incombústible.
 492. Utor, *I use*. Usus, *use*; abúse, disúse, úsual, utility, úsage, úsury.
 493. Vacca, *a cow*; vaccínate (*to transfer a disease that cows are subject to, to prevent the more serious disease of the small-pox*). [cuate.
 494. Váco, *I am empty*; vacátum, *emptied*; vacáte, vacátion, vácuum, evá-
 495. Vado, *I go*; eváde, evásion, inváde, perváde, váde-mécum (*go with me*).
 496. Vágor, *I wander*; vágrant, vágabond, vagáry, vague, extrávagant (110).
 497. Váleo, *I am well or strong*; válid, invalid, inválidate, váletudinárian, válour, válué, conválescent, aváil, preváil, counterváil, valedictory.
 498. Vápor, *steam*; vápour, eváporate.
 499. Vas, *a vessel*; vase, váscular.
 500. Vastus, *desolate, wide*; vast, waste, devástate, devástation. [terinary.
 501. Veho, *I carry*; vectus, *carried*, véhicle, convéy, convéx, inveigh, vé-
 502. Vélum, *a covering*; veil, revéal, devélop, envélop.
 503. Vendo, *I sell*; vend, vénder, vénal, véndible.
 504. Vénio, *I come*; ventum, *come*; ádvént, vénture, convéne, cónvent, Covent garden, convénient, cónvénant, évént, prévént, révenue.
 505. Verbum, *a word*; verb, ádverb, vérbal, verbócity, vérblage, próverb.
 506. Vergo, *I bend*; verge, convérge, convérgent, divérge. [*c sounded like ch.*)
 507. Vermis, *a worm*; vérmin, vermícular, vermiform (142), vermicelli (*the*)
 508. Verto, *I turn*; versus, *turned*; verse, véralon, vérsatile, avért, advért, ádverse, advertíse, convért, divért, divórce, pervért, revért, subvért, transvérsé, úniverse (489).
 509. Vérus, *true*; vérity, véry, vérify (113), verácity, verisímilar (427), avér.
 510. Vestis, *a garment*; vest, vésture, véstry (*robing room*), invést, invés-
 titure, divést.
 511. Via, *a way*; viá (*by the way*); déviate, óbviáte, óbvious, pérvious, viáticum, trivial (*common*; *literally, where three roads meet, and so much resorted to*).
 512. Vics, *a change, stead*; vicissitude, vicár, vicárious, vice-president, vice-chancellor, vice-gerent (158), viceroy (*rot, a king*), viscount.
 513. Video, *I see*; visus, *seen*; vision, visíble, visual, visionáry, visage, visit, vísta, énvý, évident, provide, prudéce (=próvidence), provision, purvéy, survéy, revise, supervíse, vide (*see*), videlicet (205, *contracted viz., namely*). [vínce.
 514. Vinco, *I conquer*; victus, *conquered*, victór, victím, vánquish, con-
 515. Vir, *a man*; triumviráte (478), virtue (*what becomes a man*), virágo, decémvír (80).
 516. Vita, *life*; vítal, vítality, aqua-vítæ (21), lígnum-vítæ (*lignum, wood*).
 517. Vitrum, *glass*; vítreous, vítrify (113), vítriol (*resembling glass*). [vive.
 518. Vivo, *I live*; víctum, *lived*; vivácity, víctuals, vívify, revise, sur-
 519. Voco, *I call*; vócatús, *called*; vox, *voice*; vocátion, vócal, equívocal (4), vócatíve, convóke, invóke, provóke, revóke, víva-voce (518).
 520. Volo, *I wish*; vóluntary, volítion, volúteer, malévolent (222).
 521. Volvo, *I roll*; volutus, *rolled*; vólume (*books in former times having been rolled up*); vóluble, volúte, convólulus, devólve, evólve, revólve.
 522. Voro, *I devour*; vorácious, graminívorous (*grasses, grain*); granívorous (*grain, grain*); herbívorous (*herbs, herb*); piscívorous (329), om-
 nívorous (280). [vout.
 523. Voveo, *I vow, I pray*; vótus, *vowed*; vote, vótíve, vótary, devóte, de-
 524. Vulgus, *the common people*; vulgár, vogue, vulgate, divúlge.
 525. Vello, *I pull*; vulsus, *pulled*; convúlse, convúlson, revúlson.

EXERCISE LX.

✎ Write out one other Derivative from 492, 496, 498, 511, 518, 525; two from 494, 495, 501, 502, 505, 509, 515, 520, 523; four from 497, 513, 514, 519, 521; eight from 504, 508:—

220. DERIVATIVES FROM GREEK.

1. Acros, *end or top of*; acró-*stic* (156), acró-*polis* (134).
2. Adelphos, *brother*; Phil-adél*phia* (122), Adél*phi*. [*agogue* (110).
3. Aér, *air*; áero-*naut* (95).—4. Agōgos, *leader*; dém-*agogue* (34), péd-
5. Agōgē, *leading*; s*yn*-*agogue*.—6. Acouo, *I hear*; acou-*stica*.
7. Agōn, *contest*; antágon-*ist*.—8. A, B, *alpha, beta*; álphab*et*.
9. Anér, *andros, man*; mon-ánd*ria* (92), pent-ánd*ria* (114), hept-ánd*ria* (61).
10. Angelos, *messenger*; ángel, ángel-*ic*, arch-ángel (13), ev-ángel-*ist* (44).
11. Anthos, *flower*; anthó-*lo-gy* (79), poly-ánth*us* (136), chrys-ánth*e-mum*.*
12. Anthrópos, *man, human being*; mis-anth*rope* (90), phil-anthróp-*ic* (122).
13. Archó, *command*; món-arch (92), ólig-arch (101), tétr-arch (162).
14. Arctos, *bear, north*; árc*t-ic*, ánt-*arct-ic*.
15. Arithmos, *number*; aríth*me-tic*, lóg-arithm (79).
16. Astron, *star*; astró-*nom-y* (99), astró-*log-y* (79), áster-*isk*.
17. Athlētēs, *wrestler*; áthlete, athlēt-*ic*. [(29), autó-*maton*.
18. Autos, *self, same*; auto-bió-graph-*y* (21, 54), autó-graph (54), autó-*crat*
19. Ballō, *I throw, cast*; s*ym*-bol, ém-blem, pró-blem, hypér-bole.
20. Biblion, *book*; bíbli*o*-pole (133), bíble, biblió-graphy (54).
21. Bios, *life*; bió-graph-*y* (54), amphi-bi-*ous*.
22. Calos, *beautiful*; calli-graph-*y* (54), calli-sthén-ics (34*).
23. Caluptō, *I cover*; apó-calyp*se* (i. e. *uncovering, revealing, Revelation*).
24. Keras, *horn*; rhinó-*ceros* (rhin, rhinos*, *nose*), monó-*ceros* (92).
25. Cholé, *bile*; chól*er*, mélan-*chol-y* (mélan*, *black*).
26. Christos, *anointed*; Christ, christ-*endom*, ánti-*christ*. [*ism*.
27. Chrōnos, *time*; chrōn-*ic*, chronó-*log-y* (79), chronó-*meter* (86), aná-*chron*-
28. Cosmos, *world*; micro-*cosm* (88), cosmó-graph-*y* (54), cosmó-*gon-y* (49).
29. Cratos, *rule*; theó-*crac-y* (165), áristo-*crat* (áristos*, *best*), dém*o*-*crat* (34).
30. Crinō, *I decide*; crísis, crític.—31. Cuclos, *circle*; cycle, cýclo-*id* (72).
32. Déca, *ten*; déca-*gon*, déca-*logue* (79).
33. Daimōn, *spirit, evil spirit*; démon, démon-*iac*, pan-démón-*ium* (112).
34. Dēmos, *people*; dém*o*-*crat* (29), epl-dém-*ic*, démó-*sthenes* (22*).
35. Dendron, *tree*; rhodo-déndron (rhōdon*, *a rose*), dendró-*log-y* (79).
36. Doxa, *opinion, praise*; órtho-*dox* (108), hétéro-*dox* (62), doxó-*log-y* (79).
37. Dogma, *opinion, doctrine*; dógma, dogmát-*ic*.
38. Drōmos, *race*; hippo-*drome* (65), dróm*edary* (the swift kind of camel).
39. Dunāmis, *strength, force*; dynám-*ics*, dýna-*sty*.
40. Oikos, *house*; ecumémical, ecó-*nom-y* (99), dí-*ocese*.
41. Erēmos, *desert*; éremite, hérm*it*. [*mine*], ge-*orgie* (47).
42. Ergon, *work*; chir-úrgeon (ch*eir**, *hand*), métall-*urgy* (metallon*, *a*
43. Éthos, *character*; éth-*ics*.—44. Eu, *well*; eú-*log-y* (79), eú-*phon-y* (123).
45. Gāmos, *marriage*; poly-*gam-y* (136), bí-*gam-y*.

1. Ακρος. 2. Αδελφος. 3. Αηρ. 4. Αγωγος. 5. Αγωγή.
6. Ακουω. 7. Αγων. 8. Α, Β. 9. Αηρ, Ανδρος. 10. Αν-
γελος. 11. Ανθος. * Χρυσος. 12. Ανθρωπος. 13. Αρχω.
14. Αρκτος. 15. Αριθμος. 16. Αστρον. 17. Αθλητης.
18. Αυτος. 19. Βαλλω. 20. Βιβλιον. 21. Βιος. 22. Καλος.
23. Καλυπτω. 24. Κερας. * Ρις, Ρινος. 25. Χολη.
- * Μελαν. 26. Χριστος. 27. Χρονος. 28. Κοσμος. 29.
- Κρατος. * Αριστος. 30. Κρινω. 31. Κυκλος. 32. Δεκα.
33. Δαιμων. 34. Δημος. * Σθενος. 35. Δενδρον. * Ροδον.
36. Δοξα. 37. Δογμα. 38. Δρομος. 39. Δυναμις. 40. Οικος.
41. Ερημος. 42. Εργον. * Χειρ. * Μεταλλον. 43. Ηθος.
44. Ευ. 45. Γαμος.

46. *Gastēr, stomach*; gastró-nom-y (99), gástr-ic.
 47. *Gē, earth*; geó-log-y (79), geó-graph-y (54), geó-metry (87).
 48. *Genos, kind, sort*; hetero-gén-eous (62), homo-gén-eous (67).
 49. *Genea, genesis, generation*; geneá-log-y (79), Génesis.
 50. *Glōtta, glōssa, tongue*; póly-glot (136), gloss, glōss-ary, epiglōttia.
 51. *Gluphō, I carve*; hīero-glýph-ic (64), tri-glyph (tría, * *three*).
 52. *Gignōskō, I know*; pro-gnō-stic, gnō-stic, gnō-sticism.
 53. *Gōnia, corner*; póly-gon, hépta-gon, héxa-gon, tri-gon (51*). [*sacred*].
 54. *Graphō, I write*; gráph-ic, pánto-graph (112), hāgió-graph-y (hāgios*,
 55. *Gramma, grammatos, writing*; āna-gram, épī-gram, díá-gram.
 56. *Gumnos, naked*; gymnáō, *I exercise*; gymnás-tic, gymnás-ium.
 57. *Hedra, seat*; cathédra-l, octa-hédra-on (octo, * *eight*).
 58. *Hēlios, sun*; hēli-acal, par-hēlion.—59. *Hēmi, half*; hēmi-sphere (151).
 60. *Hēmera, day*; ephémēra-l (i. e. *lasting for a day*), ephémēra-is.
 61. *Hepta, seven*; hépta-gon (53), hépt-arch-y (13).
 62. *Heteros, other, different*; hetero-gén-eous (48), hétéro-dox (36).
 63. *Hex, six*; héxa-gon (53), hexá-meter (86).
 64. *Hīeros, sacred*; hīero-glýph-ic (51), hīer-ārch-y (13).
 65. *Hippos, horse*; hīppo-pótamus (137), hīppo-drome (38).
 66. *Hodos, way*; méthod, éx-odus, perí-od, sýn-od, épīs-ode. (113).
 67. *Homos, same*; homó-log-ous (79), homo-gén-eous (48), hómāo-páthic
 68. *Horizō, bound, limit, determine*; horizon, āphoris-m.
 69. *Hudōr, water*; hydr-aúl-ics (aúlos, * *a pipe*), hydro-státics (153), hydró-meter (86), hýdro-gen (48), hydro-phób-ia (phóbos, * *fear*).
 70. *Icthus, fish*; ictthyó-log-y (79).—71. *Idios, peculiar*; idéi-m.
 72. *Eidos, form*; sphéro-id (151), cyclo-id (31), eal-eido-scope (22, 147).
 73. *Isos, equal*; isó-sceles (146), isó-chron-ous (27), iso-thér-mal (166).
 74. *Lambanō, I take*; Syllabē, *taking together*; syl-lab-le (i. e. *those letters of a word which are taken together to make a sound*). [(54).
 75. *Laos, people*; lay, la-ity.—76. *Lexis, phrase*; léxi-con, lexicó-graph-y
 77. *Lēpāis, seizure*; épī-lepsy.—78. *Lithos, stone*; lithó-graph-y (54).
 79. *Logos, discourse, science*; chronó-log-y (27), geó-log-y (47), pró-logue.
 80. *Lusis, loosening*; pará-lysis, aná-lysis.
 81. *Mania, madness*; mánia-c, biblio-mánia (20), mono-mánia (92).
 82. *Martur, witness*; mártyr, mártyr-dom, mártyr-log-y (79).
 83. *Mathēma, science*; mathemát-ics.
 84. *Mēchanē, machine*; mechán-ics, méchan-ism.
 85. *Melos, song*; mél-od-y (100), melo-dráma (dráma, * *an act, play*).
 86. *Metron, measure*; baró-meter (baros, * *weight*); sým-metry, hýgró-meter (hugros, * *moist*).—87. *Micros, small*; micró-meter (86).
 88. *Mētēr, mother*; metró-polis, metro-pólit-an (134).
 89. *Mimos, imitator*; pánto-mime (112), mím-ic.

46. Γαστήρ. 47. Γη. 48. Γενος. 49. Γενεα, Γενεσις.
 50. Γλωττα, Γλωσσα. 51. Γλυφω. * Τρια. 52. Γιγνωσκω.
 53. Γωνια. 54. Γραφω. * Άγιος. 55. Γραμμα, Γραμμα-
 56. 56. Γυμνος, Γυμναζω. 57. Έδρα. * Οκτω. 58.
 58. 58. Ηλιος. 59. Ημι. 60. Ημερα. 61. Έπτα. 62. Έτερος.
 63. 63. Έξ. 64. Ίερος. 65. Ίππος. 66. Όδος. 67. Όμος.
 68. 68. Όριζω. 69. Ύδωρ. * Αυλος. * Φοβος. 70. Ιχθυς.
 71. 71. Ιδιος. 72. Ειδος. 73. Ισος. 74. Δαμβανω, Συλλαβη.
 75. 75. Δαος. 76. Δεξις. 77. Δηψις. 78. Διθος. 79. Δογος.
 80. 80. Λυσις. 81. Μανια. 82. Μαρτυρ. 83. Μαθημα. 84.
 84. 84. Μηχανη. 85. Μελος. * Δραμα. 86. Μετρον. * Βαρος.
 87. 87. Υγρος. 88. Μικρος. 89. Μητηρ. 89. Μιμος.

90. *Misêd, I hate*; misô-gam-y (45).—91. *Mnêmê, memory*; mne-mônica.
 92. *Monos, alone*; mónarch, mon-ándria (9), monótony (tonos, * *tone*), mō.
 93. *Morphê, form*; meta-mórphose, meta-mórph-osis. [nástic, monk.
 94. *Muthos, fable*; myth-ical, mythó-log-y (79).
 95. *Naus, ship*; naú-sea, náuseate, náutical, áero-naut (3).
 96. *Necros, dead*; nécro-mancy, (manteia, * *prophecy*), necró-polis (134).
 97. *Neos, new*; neó-log-y (79), néo-phyte (172*), Naples (Nea-polis)
 98. *Nesos, island*; Pélopon-nese, Poly-nésia (135). [ros, * *second*].
 99. *Nomos, law*; astrô-nom-y (16), ecô-nom-y (40), deuteró-nom-y (deute-
 100. *Odê, singing, poem*; ode, pár-ody, món-ody (92), psálm-ody (140).
 101. *Oligoi, few*; ôlig-arch-y (13).—102. *Homalos, regular*, an-ómal-y.
 103. *Onoma, name*; an-ónym-ous, syn-ónym-ous, patr-oným-ic (pater, *
 104. *Optomai, I see*; op-tics, cat-óp-trics, di-óp-trics, syn-ópsis. [father].
 105. *Ophthalmos, eye*; ophthálm-ic, ophthálmia.
 106. *Oráô, I see*; di-oráma, cosm-oráma (28), pan-oráma (112).
 107. *Ornis, ornithos bird*; ornithó-log-y (79). [a word or speech].
 108. *Orthos, right*; órtho-dox (36), orthó-graph-y (54), orthó-ep-y (epos, *
 109. *Oxus, sharp*; óxy-gen (48), ox-álic, óxy-hýdro-gen (48, 69).
 110. *Pais, paidos, boy*, péd-agogue (4), péd-agog-y. [Cyrus].
 111. *Paideia, education*; cyclo-páedia (31), Cyro-paed-ia (i. e. education of
 112. *Pan, pantos, all*; pan-théon (165), pán-oply (oplon, * *a weapon*).
 113. *Pathos, feeling*; sým-path-y, anti-path-y, á-path-y, pathé-tic.
 114. *Pente, five*; pénta-gon (53), pentá-meter (87).
 115. *Petalon, a flower leaf*; pétal, monopétal-ous (92), poly-pétal-ous (136).
 116. *Petra, rock, stone*; pétri-fy, petri-fáction, salt-pétre, Peter.
 117. *Phagô, I eat*; sarcô-phag-us (sars, * *flesh*), ictthyó-phagi (70). [tástic.
 118. *Phantázô, make appear*; phántasm, phántom, phantasy (*fancy*), fan-
 119. *Phainomai, appear*; phen-ómenon, Épi-phan-y.
 120. *Phêmi, I say, declare*; ém-pha-sis, pró-phe-cy.
 121. *Pherô, I bring, cause*; phós-phor-us (124), méta-phor, perí-pher-y.
 122. *Philos, friend to, fond of*; philó-soph-y (140), philô-log-y, philharmónic.
 123. *Phônê, voice, sound*; phón-ics, sým-phon-y, eú-phon-y (44).
 124. *Phôs, light*; phós-phor-us (121), phót-ics.
 125. *Phrasis, a mode of speaking*; méta-phrase, perí-phrasis.
 126. *Phrên, phrênos, brain, mind*; phrenó-log-y (79).
 127. *Phthongos, sound*; di-phthong (di, * *twice*).
 128. *Phusis, nature*; phýs-ics, meta-phýs-ics, physiô-log-y (79).
 129. *Planaomai, I wander*; plánet.—130. *Pneuma, breath, air*; pneumát-
 131. *Poiêô, I make*; poet, pharmaco-pœia (pharmacon, * *drug*). [ics.
 132. *Polemos, war*; polém-ic.—133. *Póleô, I sell*; monó-pol-y (92).

90. Μῖσεω. 91. Μνημη. 92. Μονος. * Τονος. 93. Μορφη.
 94. Μυθος. 95. Ναυς. 96. Νεκρος. * Μαντεια. 97. Νεος.
 98. Νησος. 99. Νομος. * Δευτερος. 100. Ωιδη. 101. Ολιγοι.
 102. Όμαλος. 103. Ονομα. * Πατηρ. 104. Οπτομαι. 105.
 Οφθαλμος. 106. Όραω. 107. Ορνις, Ορνιθος. 108. Ορθος.
 * Επος. 109. Οξυς. 110. Παις, Παιδος. 111. Παιδεια.
 112. Παν, Παντος. * Όπλον. 113. Παθος. 114. Πεντε.
 115. Πεταλον. 116. Πετρα. 117. Φαγω. * Σαρξ. 118.
 Φανταζω. 119. Φαινομαι. 120. Φημι. 121. Φερω. 122.
 Φιλος. 123. Φωνη. 124. Φως. 125. Φρασις. 126. Φρην,
 Φρενος. 127. Φθογγος. * Δι. 128. Φυσις. 129. Πλα-
 ναομαι. 130. Πνευμα. 131. Ποιew. * Φαρμακον. 132.
 Πολεμος. 133. Πωλεω.

134. Polis, *city*; metró-polis (87), Constantinó-ple, Na-ples (97).
 135. Polites, *citizen*; cosmó-polite (28), pólitics, pólyty.
 136. Polus, *many*; póly-gon (53), poly-ándria (9).
 137. Potamos, *river*; potamó-log-y (79), hippo-pótamus (65).
 138. Pous, *podos, foot*; anti-podes, póly-pus (136).
 139. Prótos, *first*; próto-martyr (82), próto-type (171).
 140. Psállō, *I sing*; psálm, psálm-ody (100). [(122, 12).]
 141. Pseudēs, *false*; pséudo-philō-soph-er (122, 149), pséudo-phil-ānthrop-y
 142. Psūchē, *soul*; psychō-log-y (79), met-ēm-psych-ōsis.
 143. Pteron, *wing*; cheirō-ptera (42*), dí-pteros (127*). [*flame of fire*].
 144. Pūr, *fire*; pyro-téchn-ic (160), pyr-amid (i. e. *anything in the form of a*
 145. Rhētōr, *orator*; rhétor-ic,—146. Scelos, *leg*; isó-sceles (73).
 147. Scopeō, *I see, examine*; téle-scope (161), micro-scope (87).
 148. Sceptomai, *I see*; scépt-ic.—149. Sophos, *wise*; philō-soph-er (122),
 150. Spadō, *I draw*; spa-sm, spa-sm-ódic, [sōphist].
 151. Sphaira, *ball*; sphere, átmo-sphere (atmos, * *breath*), hémisphere (59).
 152. Stasis, *standing*; apó stasy, éc-stasy.—153. Hi-ste-ini, *I place*; system.
 154. Stellō, *I set out*; apó stle, epi-stle.—155. Stenos, *narrow, small*; ste-
 nó-graph-y (54).
 156. Stichos, *line, verse*; hémli-stich (59), dí-stich (127*), acró-stic (1).
 157. Strophē, *turning*; apó-strophe, catá-strophe.
 158. Tassō, *I set in order*; tactics, syntax.
 159. Taphos, *tomb*; épi-taph, céno-taph (kenos, * *empty*).
 160. Technē, *art*; téchni-cal, poly-téchn-ic (136), pan-téchn-ícon (112).
 161. Tēle, *far*; téle-graph (54).—162. Tetra, *four*; tétr-arch (13).
 163. Theaomai, *I look at*; théâtre.—164. Thema, *position*; theme.
 165. Theos, *god*; theó-log-y (79), pan-théon (112), á-the-ist, theó-cra-cy (29).
 166. Thermos, *warm*; thermó-meter (87), iso-thérmal (73).
 167. Thesis, *placing, position*; hypó-thesis, sýn-thesis, par-én-thesis.
 168. Temnō, *I cut*; aná-tom-y, á-tom, epi-tom-e.
 169. Topos, *place*; topó-graph-y (54), tóp-ic. [*north or south*].
 170. Trepō, *I turn*; trope, tróp-ic (*where the sun turns, going no farther*).
 171. Tupos, *a stamp, a likeness*; týpe, typó-graph-y (54).
 172. Zoon, *animal*; zoó-log-y (79), zóo-phyte (phuton, * *plant*).

EXERCISE LXI.

✎ Write out one other Derivative from 8, 12, 15, 20, 30, 36, 37, 41, 43, 49, 66, 68, 71, 76, 77, 92, 101, 102, 114, 123, 129, 148, 154, 158, 161, 163, 168, 170, 172; two from 21, 26, 27, 29, 53, 80, 84, 85, 86, 101, 112, 113, 121, 135, 151, 152, 165, 171; three from 16, 47, 79, 87, 99, 128, 149, 167; four from 13; 54, 122, 134 :—

134. Πολις. 135. Πολίτης. 136. Πολυς. 137. Ποταμος. 138. Πους, Ποδος. 139. Πρωτος. 140. Ψαλλω. 141. Ψευδης. 142. Ψύχη. 143. Πτερον. 144. Πυρ. 145. Ρητωρ. 146. Σκελος. 147. Σκοπεω. 148. Σκεπτομαι. 149. Σοφος. 150. Σπαω. 151. Σφαιρα. * Ατμος. 152. Στασις. 153. Ίστημι. 154. Στελλω. 155. Στενος. 156. Στιχος. 157. Στροφή. 158. Τασσω. 159. Ταφος. * Κενος. 160. Τεχνη. 161. Τηλε. 162. Τετρα. 163. Θεαομαι. 164. Θεμα. 165. Θεος. 166. Θερμος. 167. Θεσις. 168. Τεμνω. 169. Τοπος. 170. Τρεπω. 171. Τυπος. 172. Ζωον. * Φυτον.

PART II.

SYNTAX.

221. SYNTAX teaches the construction of sentences.

222. A sentence is an assemblage of words, conveying a complete sense; as, *Time flies*.


KINDS OF SENTENCES.

223. Sentences are either Simple or Complex.

224. A Simple sentence contains only one finite Verb; as, *Perseverance surmounts difficulties*. *I wish to see him*.

225. A Complex sentence consists of two or more sentences in combination; and, therefore, must contain more than one finite Verb; as, *Hannibal was defeated by the Romans, and was driven out of Italy*.

EXERCISE LXII.

 Underline the Simple sentences. The rest will be Complex ones:—

We are pleased with the house. Where is the book? The weather is severe. I have bought and read the book. I saw and commended the boy. The boy was delighted. His father had not seen him for six months. He had been abroad. The father had been abroad, and had not seen his son for six months. I had hardly left before he came. I am too warm to walk far. The man was vexed, and refused his assistance. The boy has been very attentive. I saw and admired the castle.

226. Sentences are also either Principal or Accessory.

227. A Principal sentence is a sentence which is not dependent on any other sentence; as, *The boy throws the stone.*

228. An Accessory sentence is a sentence which is dependent on another sentence; as, *The boy throws the stone, that he may hit the tree.*

EXPL.—Here, *that he may hit the tree*, is an Accessory sentence, being dependent on the Principal sentence, *The boy throws the stone.*

EXERCISE LXIII.

 Underline the Accessory sentences :—

I went to London that I might see him. He asked me how I went. I told him that I had walked. I will see whether I can find the book. I wish that you may be able to find it speedily. James was delighted with the book which you gave him. You might have done better if you had tried.

229. A PHRASE is a number of words conveying some sense, but not a *complete* sense, because it contains no finite Verb; as, *without doubt, beyond a question, as soon as possible.*

EXERCISE LXIV.

 Underline the Phrases :—

He will come without delay. He writes with great expedition. The boy is clever, without doubt, but he is very idle. He will write as soon as convenient. He ran with all speed. She is coming in a great hurry. Let us go at all events. For my own part, I think quite differently. No doubt, it is an excellent work. You should, at least, try to dissuade him from it. Above all, aim at thoroughly mastering a subject before you leave it. In a word, it never was so.

230. The main PARTS OF A SENTENCE are the subject, the predicate, and the object.

231. The SUBJECT is that of which we are speaking, and is always in the Nominative Case; as, *The boy runs*.

EXPL.—Here *boy* is the subject, and is Nominative to *runs*.

232. The PREDICATE is that which we assert of the subject, and is either the Verb *to be*, and an Adjective; as, *The boy is lazy*; or merely a Verb; as, *The dog runs*.


EXPL.—Here *is lazy* is the predicate in the first sentence, being what is asserted of *the boy*; *runs* is the predicate in the second, being what is asserted of *the dog*.

Obs.—Instead of an Adjective a phrase may be used, as, *we are in safety*. Here the phrase *in safety* is equivalent to *safe*.

233. The OBJECT is that which we affirm the subject to act upon; as, *He throws the stone*.

EXPL.—Here *stone* is the object, being that which he throws.

EXERCISE LXV.

 Underline the Subject, doubly underline the Object, and enclose the Predicate within brackets:—

The horse eats the corn. The corn delights the horse.
The uncle bought the house. The house pleases the uncle.
The boy wrote the letter. The letter pleased the father. The master frees the slave. The slave is exceedingly thankful.

234. The other parts of a sentence are ADJUNCTS.

235. Each main part may have an Adjunct, if necessary; as, *The boy throws the stone*, may be enlarged to *the STRONG boy IMMEDIATELY throws the LARGE stone*.

EXPL.—*Strong*, *immediately*, *large*, are Adjuncts, respectively, of the subject *boy*, the predicate *throws*, and the object *stone*.

236. TABLE OF THE PARTS OF A SENTENCE.

SUBJECT.	PREDICATE.	OBJECT.
The boy	Is-lazy.	
The boy	Runs.	
The boy	Throws	The stone.

(With Adjuncts.)

The strong boy Immediately throws The large stone.

EXERCISE LXVI.

 Write out the following sentences, in the same form :—

(*a*) *Without Adjuncts.* The carpenter mended the chair. The bird flies. The surgeon is attentive. The patient recovers. The stone falls. The boy breaks the window.

(*b*) *With Adjuncts.* The surgeon is remarkably attentive. The patient speedily recovers. The large and heavy stone falls rapidly. The diligent boy almost always makes great progress.

237. The construction of sentences depends upon the *agreement, government, and arrangement* of words.

238. Words **AGREE**, when they correspond in Number, Gender, Person, or Case; as, *He runs*.

EXPL.—The Verb *runs* agrees with *he* in Number and Person.

239. One word **GOVERNS** another, when it causes it be in some particular Case or Mood; as, *I saw her*.

EXPL.—*Her* is Objective, governed by the Active Verb *saw*.

240.—Words are properly **ARRANGED**, when they are in such an order as to convey the sense intended; as, *He alone is happy*.

EXPL.—If we alter the arrangement, we alter the sense; as, *He is happy alone*. This means something quite different.

NOUNS.

THE NOMINATIVE CASE.

RULE 1.

241.—The Verb agrees with its Nominative in Number and Person ; as, *I am* ; *He is*.

EXPL.—In the first example, *I* is the Pronoun of the *first* person, and must therefore be followed by *am*, which is the form of the first person of the Verb. In the second, *he* is the third person, and must have *is*, the third person of the Verb.

EXERCISE LXVII.

 Supply the appropriate forms of *to make*, *be*, *speak* :—

The boy () haste. The boys () haste. I () haste. Thou () made a mistake. The Sovereign and the Parliament () the laws. The Himalayan Mountains () more than five miles high. This () solitude. Thou () busy. The laws () executed by the Queen. Thou () wisely. Nature () to man. Books () the sentiments of the departed. The series of books () complete. The erection of these buildings () expensive. A part of the walks () dry. The spread of such opinions () a bad sign.

242. OBS.—The Nominative may be—

- (1.) A Noun or Pronoun ; as, *Play is pleasant* ;
- (2.) An Infinitive ; as, *To play is pleasant* ;
- (3.) A Clause ; as *To play without quarrelling is pleasant*.

EXERCISE LXVIII.

 Underline the Nominatives ; state their kind, thus :—
(3.)

To possess a good temper is better than wealth.

Leonidas was heroic. The author writes well. The constitution of our country has been the work of several ages. To live virtuously, is to live happily. He only deserves the name of man, who performs the duties of humanity. The fear of possible evil, often prevents the performance of certain good. A great man has said, that "difficulty is the condition of success." From crag to crag leaps the live thunder. To err, is human ; to forgive, divine.

243. RULE 1. A.—Singular Nominatives, connected by *and*, require the Verb and Pronoun to be in the Plural; as, *England, Scotland, and Wales form Great Britain.*

EXPL.—Here the *three* Nominatives, England, Scotland, and Wales, make a Plural, and therefore require the Verb, *form*, to be so too. So, in the sentence, *To live moderately and to take exercise are necessary to health*; there are two Nominatives, *to live moderately, to take exercise*, connected by *and*: the Verb is therefore Plural.

Obs.—Two Singular Nouns coupled by *and*, when conveying, together, the notion of *one* thing, take a Singular Verb; as, *Bread-and-butter is wholesome.* We say *is*, because by *bread-and-butter* we understand one thing; and *bread-and-butter* is, in fact, a sort of compound. In German, it is a regular compound, *butterbrodt* (that is, butterbread). So, *Bread-and-cheese MAKES a good luncheon*; *The horse-and-chaise is at the door.* Of course, when the things are spoken of as distinct, they require a plural Verb, &c.; as, *The bread and the cheese ARE both good*; *I like THEM very much.*

EXERCISE LXIX.

 Supply any appropriate Verb or Pronoun; underline the Nominatives:—

Cæsar and Pompey () great generals. Athens and Sparta () the chief Grecian cities. Chronology and geography () the eyes of history. To write legibly, to speak correctly, and to compose readily, () useful arts; and (*pr.*) can be acquired only by attentive practice. Demosthenes and Cicero () the greatest orators of antiquity: (*pr.*) (*v.*) left an imperishable name behind them. Your bread and milk () on the table: (*pr.*) (*v.*) rather hot. Wine and water () injurious to him in his present state of health. The bread and the cheese () both fallen down: will you pick () up for me? Cowardice and boasting, tyranny and obsequiousness, often () each other, and wherever (*pr.*) (*v.*) found (*pr.*) discover a base mind. Health, competency, and contentment, () the best earthly felicity; (*pr.*) therefore, who (*v.*) (*pr.*) should value (*pr.*)

244. RULE 1. B.—Singular Nominatives of the third person, separated by *or*, or *nor*, require the Verb and Pronoun to be in the Singular; as, *Either John or his brother has your book.*

EXPL.—Here only *one* of them has the book, and *one* is Singular, therefore (241) we must have *has*, the Singular form of the Verb. So, too, it must be, *Neither John nor his brother has the book*; the construction not being affected by the negative.

EXERCISE LXX.

 Supply any appropriate Verb or Pronoun; underline the Nominatives:—

My friend or his cousin () you every morning.
 Neither astrology nor alchemy () the name of a science.
 He or Jane () in the house. Neither cotton, silk, nor tea () produced in this country. To feel elated on account of our own acquirements, or to despise others who know less, () a contented mind, or a depraved heart. To scorn or to hate him () equally foolish.

245. RULE 1. C.—When Nominatives of different Numbers are separated by *or*, or *nor*, the Verb and Pronoun must be in the Plural; as, *Neither the general nor the soldiers have arrived; they were expected earlier.*

Obs.—Generally, the Plural Nominative should be placed next the Verb.

EXERCISE LXXI.

 Supply the proper Verbs and Pronouns; underline the Nominatives:—


He or his friends () to blame. The prince or his courtiers () arrived. Neither he nor they () been idle. Where () the hopes or the vigour of youth? Neither the book nor the letters () arrived. Neither riches nor fame () so valuable as health.

246. RULE 1. D.—When **COLLECTIVE NOUNS** imply plurality, the Verb and Pronoun are Plural ; as, *The people give their opinion.*

But when unity, or oneness, is implied, the Verb and Pronoun must be Singular ; as, *The mob was dispersed, it was very riotous.*

EXPL.—In the first sentence, the Collective Noun *people*, conveying the notion of plurality, the Verb (*are*), and the Pronoun (*they*), are Plural. In the second, the Noun, *mob*, having the notion of unity, the Verb (*was*), and the Pronoun (*it*), are Singular.

EXERCISE LXXII.

 Supply the appropriate Verbs and Pronouns, and underline the Nominatives to the respective Verbs supplied :—

The parliament () prorogued ; () meets again in February. The army () disbanded : peace renders () services no longer necessary. The clergy () not unanimous on the subject. Congress () deliberated since October. The cattle () been driven into the meadow ; John drove (). The convocation () adjourned ; (*pr.*) (*v.*) its sittings in a month. The navy () well manned. The public () respectfully informed. The committee () issued the following recommendation. The crew () nearly complete. The rest () now aboard. The party () much divided, or () might assume the government.

247. OBS.—Those Collective Nouns, which have but one form, are used in the Plural only ; as, *mankind, clergy, people* (= persons). Those, which have two forms, *generally* take the Verb and Pronoun in the Singular, when the Singular form is used ; as, *The party has little influence because it is so much divided.* The Collective Noun, *party*, has two forms ; *party*, Singular, and *parties*, Plural : and the Singular being used, the Verb *has*, and the Pronoun *it*, are used in the Singular. If we use the Plural form, the Verb and Pronoun must be Plural. Thus, *Parties are now nearly balanced, and their movements are therefore made with greater caution.*

248. RULE 1. E.—Nouns used figuratively in the Singular form with a Plural signification, require the Verb to be Plural; as, *There are seventy head of cattle in the meadow.*

EXPL.—Here the word *head* is used figuratively in the Singular form, but with a Plural signification, and therefore requires the Verb, *are*, to be in the Plural.

EXERCISE LXXIII.

 Supply the appropriate Verbs and Pronouns :—

Ten sail of the line () to join the channel fleet. Five hundred horse () for the army in a week. Three thousand foot () returned; () future destination is not known. There () seventy head of oxen in the market.

249. RULE 1. F.—Most of those Nouns which have only a Plural termination are used with Verbs in the Plural; as, *Riches take to themselves wings and fly away,*

250. OBS—Some, however, are used in the Singular only; as *What news is abroad?* Some, in both Numbers; as *This means is the most suitable*; or, *These means are the most suitable.*

The names of sciences and some other Nouns are found in both Numbers, but the Plural is more common; as, *The classics are acquired only by hard labour. Physics include all the sciences relating to the mechanical properties of matter.*

EXERCISE LXXIV.

 Supply appropriate Verbs and Pronouns :—

Such an amends as he can make () not worth the asking. The pure mathematics () arithmetic, algebra, and geometry. The alms () been injudiciously bestowed. Politics () not always improve a man's fortune or temper. The ashes () been thrown away. Great pains () been taken by him. The thanks of his country () been presented to him. His wages () been raised.

251. RULE 1. G.—When a Noun or Pronoun, followed by the Complete or Incomplete Participle, neither governs any word nor is governed by any, it is in the Nominative Absolute; as, *He being penitent, we pardoned him.*

EXPL.—Here *he* is followed by the Incomplete Participle *being*, and not governing, or being governed by, any word in the sentence, is in the Nominative Absolute.

EXERCISE LXXV.

 Underline the Nominatives Absolute:—

The town being relieved, the enemy raised the siege. We are in great suspense, no further news having been heard. I tell you, that, your son having thus wasted his time, we have no further hopes of him. This done, he marched towards the city. That being the case, I can make no objection. The war being finished, the general withdrew his troops.

POSITION OF THE NOMINATIVE.

252. Obs.—The usual place of the Nominative is before the Verb; as, *A messenger was sent.* But in certain cases this order is inverted.

(1.) When a sentence begins with some Adverbs or a phrase, as *here, there, hence, thence, then, thus, &c.*; as, *There was a messenger sent; In the beginning was the word.*

(2.) When the sentence begins with *neither* or *nor*; as, *He will not go himself, nor will he let any one else go.*

(3.) With the Verbs *to say, to answer, to continue*, used parenthetically; as, *Come, said he, with all expedition; Soon, answered the captain, all will be right.*

(4.) In interrogative sentences; as, *Where is he?*

(5.) In imperative sentences; as, *Go ye into all the world.*

(6.) With the Past Subjunctive used without a Conjunction; as, *Were he able, he would come.* (360.)

(7.) When, for the sake of emphasis, some other important word is put first in the sentence; as, *Never will I consent to such a dishonourable proceeding. In came his father, just as he was writing to him. Down fell the house with a great crash.*

THE OBJECTIVE CASE.

RULE 2.

253. The Objective Case follows Active Verbs and Prepositions.

254. RULE 2. A.—Active Verbs govern the Objective Case; as, *He held me.*

EXPL.—Here *held* is an Active Verb, and the object of it is *me*, which is therefore in the Objective Case. So, *Those whom he thought to be true to his party*, not *who* he thought; *whom* being the object of the Active Verb, *thought*. (292.)

EXERCISE LXXVI.

 (*) Underline the Objectives, and doubly underline the Verbs governing them:—

He threw a stone. Hold my hand. England governs the most widely extended empire. Brutus stabbed Cæsar. Take away that bauble. I would not have a slave to till my ground.

(b) Supply the Objectives. Underline the governing Verbs:—

She told (1st person sing.) that you struck (3rd sing. fem.) He dislikes (1st person plur.) I will have (2nd sing.) The men have been insolent; I will dismiss (). Hear (1st sing.) Romans! She is your friend; do not disregard (). I requested my brother () you know to write to me soon. The book () you admire is lent. I have sold that horse () the groom injured. He () thou lovest, is sick.

255. OBS.—A phrase or sentence often stands as an Objective; as, *I know how you have served me.* Here the object of the Active Verb *know* is the sentence *how-you-have-served-me*. These may be termed Objective sentences.

EXERCISE LXXVII.


 Underline the Objective sentences, and doubly underline the words governing them:—

I feel how hard it will be. I understand when he will arrive. The preacher proclaims, All is vanity. He cannot tell when he may be wanted. I wish to know what you think.

256. RULE 2. B.—The Passive of Verbs, which signify *asking, telling, teaching, granting, refusing, showing, paying, promising, offering*, is sometimes followed by an Objective; as, *He was much pleased with the ship, when he was shown her by the officers.*

EXPL.—Here *her* is Objective, after the Passive *was shown*.

EXERCISE LXXVIII.

 Underline the Objectives, and doubly underline the Verbs governing them. Supply the appropriate Pronouns:—


He was paid a large sum for his services. He did not apply for the post, but was offered (). The prince did not marry the princess, although he was promised (). I have been offered a book for my knife. I will ask for the appointment, but I may be refused (). He understands geometry, I must be taught (). Essex sought an interview with Elizabeth, but was denied her presence. He valued the favour when he was granted it. He was shown the picture gallery.

NOTE.—On Neuter Verbs, with the Objective, see 355.

257. RULE 2. C.—Prepositions govern the Objective case; as, *I sent a book to him.*

EXPL.—Here *him* is Objective after the Preposition *to*.

EXERCISE LXXIX.

 (a) Underline the Objectives, and doubly underline the Prepositions governing them:—

The balloon floats over the earth. The Great Western sails over the Atlantic. Frederick Barbarossa is said to have bathed in the river Cydnus. The plague raged in London during the reign of the second Charles. We can now descend into Pompeii.

(b) Supply the Pronouns in the Objective:—

I will present it to (3rd sing. fem.) Do not provide much for (1st sing.) Take the talents from (3rd sing. masc.) I will do without (2nd sing.) He has been benefitted by (1st plur.) The property has been divided among (3rd plur.) By () are you employed? Render tribute to () tribute is due. () did he call on? (294.) He gives it to () he will.

258. RULE 2. D.—Nouns of time, space, measurement, are used in the Objective without a Preposition; as, *He walked a mile.*

EXPL.—Here *mile*, which is a Noun of space, is in the Objective, not governed by any Preposition.

EXERCISE LXXX.

 Underline the Nouns of time, space, &c. :—

A ditch has been dug three feet deep. His brother stands six feet high. The table is two yards long. How many feet wide is your garden? Her son was ten years old. The book cost three pounds. He walks three hours every day. The box must be two feet three inches deep. He had been sitting up all night, and had to be at work all the following day.

259. RULE 2. E.—*Than* requires the RELATIVE following it to be in the Objective Case, but does not govern any other words; as, *I met Henry, than whom I never saw a more excellent youth.*

EXPL.—Here, the relative *whom* follows *than* in the Objective; *who* would not be so good. You must not, however, say, *He is better than me*, but *he is better than I*; the Pronoun not being governed by any other word, but being the subject of the Verb *am* understood, and therefore in the Nominative Case.

260. CAUTION.—*As* never governs the Objective. Say, *He is as good as I*; not, *as me*.

EXPL.—In the sentence, *I told him the same as her*, *her* is the Objective, governed, not by *as*, but by the Verb *told*.

EXERCISE LXXXI.

 Supply the appropriate Pronouns :—

He was contemporary with Burke, than () our country has produced few greater orators. John is older than (1st sing.) I consider you to be more clever than (3rd sing.) I dare not treat you better than (3rd sing.) I know him to be as good as (3rd sing. fem.) I thought you felt as much as (3rd plur.) I have been reading Shakspeare, than () few afford me greater delight. I think thy sister is wiser than (2nd sing.)

THE POSSESSIVE CASE.

RULE 3.

261.—When two Nouns so come together that the latter is considered to belong to the former, the former is put in the Possessive Case; as, *Richard's apple*.

EXPL.—Here *Richard* is put in the Possessive, *Richard's*, because the Noun *apple*, immediately following it, is represented as belonging to him.

EXERCISE LXXXII.

 Underline the Singular Possessives, and doubly underline the Plural :—


The poet's genius would have immortalized the monarch's deeds. The master's learning commands the boys' respect. The children's playfulness amused us. The bird's flight is rapid. The enemies' resistance will be very formidable. He rises as on eagles' wings. We should not interfere with others' affairs. They should have been attending to their friends' affairs. The merchants' speculations having been successful are now commended by all.

262. RULE 3. A.—The sense of the Possessive is often expressed by the Objective with *of*; as, *The poet's genius*, or, *The genius of the poet*.

EXPL.—Here the sense of the Possessive form, *poet's genius*, is expressed by transposing the Nouns, and governing the latter by *of*. So, too, *the boys' forgetfulness* = *the forgetfulness of the boys*.

263. OBS.—As a GENERAL rule, the Possessive form, is used with persons, or things spoken of as persons; but the Objective and *of* with other Nouns; thus we say, *the coachman's skill*, but *the speed of the coach*.

EXERCISE LXXXIII.

 Change the Possessives of the preceding Exercise into the Objective with *of* :—

264. RULE 3. B.—When a Noun belongs to two or more Nouns immediately following one another, the sign of the Possessive is usually affixed to the last only ; as, *England and France's armies were then united.*

EXPL.—Here the form of the Possessive is not used with *England*, but only with *France*, immediately preceding the word *armies*, although the *armies* are the common property of both.

EXERCISE LXXXIV.

 Put the following sentences into the Possessive form:—

The beauty of Carmel and Sharon shall be given to it. The property of John, James, and Henry lies in Middlesex. The debates of the Lords and Commons. The oratory of Burke, Fox, and Pitt has been greatly lauded. The presence of the prince, king, and emperor would have given a dignity to the ceremony. The paintings of Reynolds, West, and Lawrence have been greatly admired.

265. RULE 3. C.—But if any words intervene between the series of Nouns, the sign of the Possessive must be used with each ; as, *The Andromeda's, not the Invincible's, nor the Victory's crew, has been paid off.*

EXPL.—Here the series is interrupted by *nor* and *not*, and the Possessive form must therefore be used with all the Nouns, viz. *Andromeda's, Invincible's, Victory's.*

EXERCISE LXXXV.

 Put the following sentences into the Possessive form:—

The modesty of John, as well as that of his brother, has been the subject of observation. It was the influence of wealth more than that of virtue which he exercised. The abilities and worth of the youth, without those of his father, would have insured his success. The worth of his father, to say nothing of that of his uncle, has greatly assisted him.

266. RULE 3. D.—The form of the Possessive WITH *of* may be used when the possessor is supposed to have more things of the kind than are referred to in the sentence ; as, *That book is one of my brother's.*

EXPL.—Here, my brother is supposed to have more books than the one adverted to ; so that the sentence really means, *That book is one book of my brother's books.* It would be improper to say, *The affection of my brother's,* for the feeling of affection is only one.

EXERCISE LXXXVI.


 Underline those Possessives which imply a plurality of the objects possessed :—

I have sold a house of my mother's for her. My father's house has just been pulled down. He was an old friend of theirs. That adventure of the man's has excited great astonishment. Another stratagem of the enemy's has been detected. The law of gravitation is a discovery of Sir Isaac Newton's. The steam engine is an Englishman's invention. The Anabasis is a work of Xenophon's. That horse is one of James's. The Aeneid is a poem of Virgil's. I was observing that Henry's attachment to his sister was very great.

267. RULE 3. E.—In a Possessive phrase the last word is often understood ; as, *He is gone to St. James's.*

EXPL.—Here *palace* is understood.

EXERCISE LXXXVII.

 Supply the word which is understood after the Possessive :—

Nelson is buried at St. Paul's. I called at Richard's for my sister's books. Let it be left at the confectioner's. My sister is to be married at St. Martin's. St. Peter's, at Rome, is the finest building in the world. I would send him to the draper's, if I were you. He was gone to the bookseller's. I shall have been travelling twenty hours when I reach my cousin's.

APPOSITION.


RULE 4.

268. When Nouns are in Apposition, they are in the same Case; as, *Napoleon the Emperor governed France.*

EXPL.—Here *Napoleon* and *Emperor* are in Apposition (the two words representing the same person), and are therefore in the same Case, the Nominative, being the subjects of the Verb *governed*.

269. OBS.—A Noun or Pronoun is said to be in Apposition, when it is added to another Noun or Pronoun by way of explanation or description; as, *Napoleon, the Emperor; William, the Conqueror; the Queen, Victoria.*

EXERCISE LXXXVIII.

 Underline the words in Apposition. Name the Case:—

Spenser, the poet, lived in the reign of Elizabeth, the Queen of England. I have read Milton's great work, the *Paradise Lost*. I have received fifty pounds, a sum quite equal to my wants. I dare not be ungrateful to him, my earliest friend. London, the capital of England, the greatest city in the world, is on the river Thames. I will see him myself. Xenophon, the soldier and historian, was a disciple of Socrates, the philosopher. Sir Philip Sidney, the author of *Arcadia*, was killed at the battle of Zutphen. Rome is on the river Tiber.

270. RULE 4. A.—When Possessives are in Apposition, the *s* and the apostrophe are used with only one of them; as, *I have been reading an essay of Bacon's, the philosopher*; or, *of Bacon, the philosopher's*.

271. OBS.—If the last term consist of several words, or if there be more terms than one, the form of the Possessive must be used with only the first Noun; as, *I have been reading an essay of Bacon's, the most eminent English philosopher*. Or, *I have been reading an essay of Bacon's, the lawyer, scholar, and philosopher*.

EXERCISE LXXXIX.

 Underline the Nouns in Apposition:—


Call at Smith, the hatter's. Call at Smith's, the hatter and draper. I have a letter of Cowper's, the poet. This sentiment is Xenophon's, the general and historian. That expression is Johnson's, one of the giants of literature. That theory is Kepler's, the great German astronomer. The garden might have been your brother Henry's. Those colours are the Victory's, the flag-ship of Nelson.

272. RULE 4. B.—The Verb *to be*, and Neuter, and Passive Verbs generally, have the same Case after as before them, when the Nouns or Pronouns signify the same person or thing; as, *Who is the general? I am he.*

EXPL.—*I*, before the Verb *to be*, is in the *Nominative*, and, therefore, *he* after it, meaning the same person, must also be in the *Nominative*. So, *He is appointed captain.* Here *he* and *captain* after the Passive Verb, *is appointed*, mean the same person, and are therefore in the same Case.

273. OBS.—These verbs are called Apposition Verbs.

EXERCISE XC.

 Underline the Nouns or Pronouns in Apposition. Name the Case. Supply the appropriate Pronoun:—

He was a good man. He has been a merchant. He is chosen librarian. Was it your friend I saw? Let her be called Mary. It cannot have been (), for he is in France. I supposed it to be (*3rd sing. fem.*) Alexander is called the Great. This occurrence has been the cause of much annoyance. He became a learned man by great industry. Who was the victor? I have considered him to be a good man. He will be a great scholar. Who will be elected member for the city? Do not be alarmed. It is (*1st sing.*) He is worthless who is a sluggard. He declared him to be a coward. To wish well to others is benevolence. Scipio was called the sword of Rome, and Fabius the shield. To shrink from duty because it is arduous, is the mark of a weak mind or a bad heart.

VERBAL NOUNS.

RULE 5.

274. Most Verbs have Nouns derived from them called Verbal Nouns ; as, *Early rising is conducive to health.*

EXPL.—*Rising* is a Verbal Noun, from the Verb *to rise*.


275. OBS.—These Verbal Nouns have the same form as the Complete and Incomplete Participles : but they may be distinguished from the mere Participles by their having CASE, like Nouns. Thus, in the former sentence, *rising* is a Verbal, for it is the Nominative to *is*. If *rising* be not considered as a Noun, then the Verb, *is*, is without a Nominative. So, *By the roaring of the lion*. *By* is a Preposition, and must have an object. *Roaring* is the object, and is, therefore, a Noun in the Objective Case.

276. RULE 5. A.—The Verbal in *ing* may, like other Nouns, take *of* after it ; as, *The cheering of the people gratified the sovereign.*

277. RULE 5. B.—But it has often the power of a Verb governing the Noun following in the Objective ; as, *The receiving this news gave him pleasure.*

278. OBS.—Sometimes the insertion of the *of* may cause ambiguity, as, *The reading of our author pleases us*. This sentence may mean either that our reading a certain author pleases us, or that the author's own manner of reading pleases us. The first sense will be better expressed by rejecting the *of*, and putting *author* in the Objective, as governed by the Verbal *reading* ; thus, *the reading our author*, or *reading our author pleases us*. The second sense requires the *of*, or the equivalent Possessive phrase, as, *the reading of our author pleases us*, or *our author's reading pleases us*.

EXERCISE XCI.

 Underline the Verbals used simply as Nouns, and doubly underline those having the power of Verbs. State their Case. Enclose in brackets the Participles used as Adjectives ; as, *the (RISING) sun* :—

The rising of the sun was very glorious. The rising sun awoke me. The sun rising above the horizon showed the beautiful landscape. By the roaring of the lion they were much alarmed. The lion roaring after his prey came upon the party. The teaching of the master is creditable to him. Teaching the boy is easy, for he is attentive. The preparing the statement requires time. The acquiring of any thing valuable requires perseverance. The learning mathematics is most useful. An acquiring mind is an improving mind. A betraying of a trust is no ordinary crime. The hearing my father is not so good as it was. The hearing of my father is more than ever pleasing to me. Give us the hearing ear, and the understanding heart. He finds pleasure in teasing others. The teasing of others annoys him. The writing of the letter is very legible.

279. OBS.—When a Verbal Noun contains an auxiliary, it is called a **COMPOUND Verbal Noun**; as, *The having been betrayed makes one suspicious.*

EXERCISE XCII.

 Underline the Compound Verbals. Name the case:—

Thus : *Obj. Prep. by.*

By having received I am induced to give.

Enclose in brackets the Participles used simply as Verbs :—

The having been calumniated does him no injury. My being received was owing to his influence. I do not fear that, having endured evils so much greater. Through not having improved his mind in youth, he is now contemptible in manhood. His farm, not having been attended to, is worth little to him.

280. RULE 5. C.—Verbal Nouns are often used after Possessives or Possessive Pronouns ; as, *My friend's deserting me, gave me trouble.*

EXPL.—The Verbal *deserting* follows the Possessive *friend's*.

EXERCISE XCIII.

 Underline the Verbals, and the Possessives :—

Hannibal's having wintered at Capua drove him out of Italy. The sun and moon's attracting the water causes the tides. The thief's sneezing awoke them. My calling on him was fortunate. His receiving so large a property pleases us.


PRONOUNS.

RULE 6.

281. Pronouns must agree with the Nouns they represent in Gender, Number, and Person ; as, *The officer has returned ; he is praised for his bravery. Thou who couldst help me hast done nothing.*

EXPL.—In the first sentence the Personal Pronoun *he*, and the Possessive Pronoun *his* agree with their antecedent, *officer*, in the Masculine Gender, Singular Number, third Person. In the last sentence the relative *who* is used, as its antecedent *thou* is a Person ; and is like *thou* common as to Gender, of the Singular Number and Second Person.

EXERCISE XCIV.


 Supply the appropriate Pronouns, and underline the Nouns to which they refer :—

The ships have sailed ; () are to proceed to the Mediterranean. The dogs () you gave me are dead. The house is re-building ; () was burnt down. The books are not injured, although () have been tossed about. The Queen will dissolve Parliament ; () will go to the house in person. The box () was sent from home is broken ; () had been injured before () arrival. The friend () left me will reach London tomorrow. The army has gone to () winter quarters. Though the men know () are in error, () will not retrace () steps. Is this the path () leads out of the wood ? Where are those () promised to help us ? I cannot tell whether those () have made () statements are to be relied upon. The woman () he censured is innocent. The Parliament () made war on Charles the First, is called the Long Parliament ; Charles the Second was restored by () remaining members. The wish of a free nation tells on () government. The people are overjoyed at the victory ; () wish for an illumination. He has lost his hat : have you seen () ?

282. RULE 6. A.—The Pronoun and the Noun it represents may be both used as Nominatives to the same Verb, when strong emphasis is to be marked ; as, *The LORD HE is God.*

EXPL.—Here, both the word *Lord*, and its Pronoun *he*, are the subjects of the Verb *is*. The same is observed in the Objective ; as, *Worship him, the Creator of all things, not lifeless idols.* The Noun and Pronoun are in fact in Apposition. (268.) In familiar language this usage is not allowable. Thus, *William is a good boy ; not William he is a good boy.*

EXERCISE XCV.

 Underline the double Nominatives, and enclose in brackets the Verbs to which they are subjects :—

The words that I speak unto you, they are spirit, and they are life. Wisdom, that is the principal thing.

283. RULE 6. B.—When antecedents of different persons are connected by *and*, the Pronoun Plural agrees with the first person rather than with the second, and with the second rather than with the third ; as, *He and I have made the arrangement ; WE want no assistance now.*

EXPL.—Here the antecedents *He* and *I* are of the *third* and *first* person, and the Pronoun which represents them must be of the *first* person (*we*), and not the *third*.

EXERCISE XCVI.

 Supply the appropriate Verbs and Pronouns :—

They tell Henry and me that () are idle. You and my brother () blamed ; but I know (*pr.*) (*v.*) not guilty. How could you and I do this, seeing (*pr.*) (*v.*) absent ? My sister, you, and myself will leave off as soon as (*pr.*) (*v.*) finished this exercise. As you, your friend, and I, have now been studying hard for some time, () may soon expect to make great progress. She and I would have come, if () could have done so.

284. RULE 6. C. (1.) In the position of Pronouns of different persons, the second precedes the others, and the third precedes the first; as, *You and he will go. He and I will go.*

EXPL.—Here *he and you, I and he*, would not be correct.

285. OBS.—A Noun will have the same place as the third Personal Pronoun; as, *He says he saw either my cousin or me.* Here *cousin* in the third person precedes *me* in the first.

(2.) With the Plural Pronouns, *we* has the first place, *you* the second, and *they* the third; as, *We and they start to-morrow.*

EXPL.—Here the first person *we*, precedes the third *they*.

286. OBS.—The reason of the difference in the Position of the Singular and Plural Pronouns, is this. In the Singular Number the speaker (*I*), puts himself after the person spoken to, and the person spoken of, as a matter of politeness. But in the Plural Number, for the same reason, he puts those who are most intimately associated with him in the first place (unavoidably including himself); then the persons spoken to, and then those spoken of.

EXERCISE XCVII.

 Write over the Pronouns what Person they are:—

I would have told you and him that I wished not for your friendship. I am informed that neither you nor I are much esteemed by him. How did you and your attorney succeed in settling the matter? How must the attorney and I proceed? I told you and them to come early. Neither we nor you have in this respect done our duty. We and our brothers may leave London to-day. Why should we tell you or them of our plans?

287. RULE 6. D.—The Neuter Pronoun, *it*, often represents a clause, and Nouns or Pronouns of any Gender, Number, and Person; as, *It is I.*

EXPL.—Here *it* refers to the first Personal Pronoun *I*. So *It is the duty of the Christian to love his enemies.* Here *it* represents the clause *to love his enemies*.

EXERCISE XCVIII.

 Underline the words which *it* represents :—

It is my brother. It was she who would have betrayed me. What are those noises? It is the winds that are blowing. It is painful to be blamed when we have done our best. They ought to know that it is their interests we are consulting. It is the neglect of my friends that affects me so keenly.

288. RULE 6. E.—When *as* has the force of a Relative, the Verb following it agrees in Number, &c., with the Noun to which *as* refers ; as, *His statements were as follow.*

EXPL.—Here *as* has the force of a Relative, and refers to the Noun *statements* ; the Verb is therefore *Plural*. So, *The statement was as follows* : Here the Noun and Verb are both Singular.

EXERCISE XCIX.

 Supply any appropriate Verbs :—

I cannot tell whether your conduct is as () been reported. Your conduct cannot be as () been now described. His accounts were as (). His life is such as () a Christian. His difficulties were as () now related.

289. RULE 6. F.—The Relative *which* has sometimes a clause as its antecedent ; as, *He likes reading, which I am glad to hear.*

EXPL.—The clause *he likes reading*, is the antecedent to *which*.

EXERCISE C.

 Underline the Relatives, and their Antecedents :—

To assert that, which he has done, shews how little he is to be relied on. He is neither over exalted by prosperity, nor too much depressed by misfortune ; which you must allow marks a great mind. He has resolved to go to sea, which has caused us much grief. To possess an empire on which the sun never sets, which England does, can be said of no other country.

290. RULE 6. G.—*That* should be used instead of *who* or *which*; after the Interrogative *who*, the Adjective *same*, the Superlative Degree, and two or more Antecedents, one requiring *who*, and the other *which*; as, *Who that has examined him can doubt his guilt?*

EXPL.—Here *that*, and not *who*, is used, because it follows the interrogative *who*. So, *The men and the measures that you talk about: The same story that you told: Newton is the greatest philosopher that this country has produced.*

EXERCISE CI.

 Supply the Relatives. Underline the Antecedents:—

Who () can help himself will submit to such degradation? The most welcome news () can be brought me is concerning my brother. I met the gentleman () you introduced in the Strand: he was driving the finest horse () I ever saw. The monkeys and the other animals () you saw are dead. Many of Johnson's works () you so much admire were written in great haste. The friends and the pursuits () please him the most, are not of service to his reputation. I do not know the course () is most advisable under the circumstances in () you are placed.

291. RULE 6. H.—The Relative should be placed as near as possible to its Antecedent; as *I wished the officer, who arrested the man, to state the charge against him.*

EXPL.—Here the Relative *who* is close to its antecedent, *officer*. If we remove the Relative from its antecedent, we make the meaning of the sentence doubtful. Thus, *I wished the officer to state the charge against him, who arrested the man.* If it is intended to convey the sense of the first sentence, this arrangement is faulty. It would only be correct, if I wished the officer to state the charge against the person who arrested the man; in which case *him* is the antecedent to the Relative *who*. So also, *I who command you am the person*, has a differing from *I am the person who commands you.*

EXERCISE CII.

 Underline the Antecedents:—

He who has done this is no friend. He is no friend who has done this. I sold my house, which was not large, for the sum you named. I sold my house for the sum you named, which was not large. Art thou the general who has charge of the castle? Art thou who hast charge of the castle, the general?

292. RULE 6. I.—(1.) If no Nominative come between a Relative and a Verb, the Relative is the Nominative to that Verb; as, *The boy who was here, is gone.*


EXPL.—Here, as no Nominative intervenes between the Relative *who* and the Verb *was*, *who* is the Nominative to *was*.

(2.) But if a Nominative do come between, the Relative is Objective, governed by a Preposition *before* it, or Verb *after* it; as, *The boy whom you saw, and to whom you spoke, is gone.*

EXPL.—Here a Nominative, *you*, comes between the Relative *whom* and the Verb *saw* in the first clause, and between *whom* and the Verb *spoke* in the second. The Relatives, therefore, cannot be Nominatives. The first *whom* is governed by the Active Verb *saw*, and the second by the Preposition *to*.

293. OBS.—The Relative is often Possessive, depending on a Noun following it; as, *Do not trust him, whose promises have often been broken.*

EXERCISE CIII.

 Underline the Relatives in the Nominative, and also the Verbs to which they are the subjects. Doubly underline the Objectives, and the words governing them. Enclose in brackets the Possessives, and the Nouns they depend on:—

God, that made the world and all things therein, dwelleth not in temples made with hands. We know whom we worship. I care not what you deny me. He, on whom we relied, has deceived us. The God who preserveth me, whose I am, and whom I serve. He is a friend who loves me and whom I love, and whose friendship I will not resign.

294. RULE 6. K.—Sometimes the Relative is governed by a Preposition *following* it; as, *The school which he went to was a good one.*

EXPL.—Here the Relative *which* is governed by the Preposition *to* following it. When *that* is used as a Relative, the Preposition **ALWAYS** comes after; as, *The horse that he rides on.* So the interrogatives, generally, have the Preposition coming after them, as, *Which did he send for?* This construction marks the character of the sentence more strongly than if the Preposition were put first, by throwing the Interrogative or Relative to the beginning of the sentence, and so giving it emphasis.

EXERCISE CIV.

 Underline the Relatives and Interrogatives, and doubly underline the Prepositions governing them:—

I do not know what my friend is driving at by these remarks. Whom did the coach run over? Which did he call for? What was it all about? The house, which he lives in, is an old one. The paper, which you write on, is not good.

295. OBS.—It will be seen that the Relative is always the first word in its own clause, except when preceded by a Preposition.

296. RULE 6. L.—An Antecedent of the third person is sometimes omitted; as, *Who will, may weep.*

EXPL.—Here *who will* is equivalent to *those who will*. This usage is common in proverbial sayings, but is hardly allowable in familiar language.

EXERCISE CV.

 Supply the Antecedents in the following sentences:—

Who steals my purse, steals trash. Who lives to nature, rarely can be poor; who lives to fancy, never can be rich. Whom he would he slew, and whom he would he kept alive. Who can advise, may speak. Who pries, is indiscreet. Who finds the clearest not clear, thinks the darkest not obscure. Who seizes too rapidly, drops as hastily.

297. RULE 6. M.—The Relatives are often omitted; as, *I received the present you sent me.*

EXPL.—Here the Noun *present* is the Antecedent to the Relative *that* or *which* understood.

EXERCISE CVI.

 Supply the Relatives where they might be used:—

He knows the man I spoke about. It was the happiest day I ever spent. Have you purchased that Edition of Cicero I named to you? Middleton wrote the Life of Cicero you were reading. The poems Cicero wrote are lost. When we think of the enjoyments we want, we should think also of the troubles from which we are free. Charity, like the sun, brightens every object it shines upon. A censorious disposition casts every character into the darkest shade it will bear.

298. RULE 6. N.—When the Demonstratives relate to two different subjects previously mentioned, **THIS** relates to the *second*, **THAT** to the *first*; as, *Idleness and industry produce very different results; this leads to comfort and respectability, that to want and degradation.*

EXPL.—So also, in the use of *the one, the other; the former, the latter*: *the one, the latter* correspond to *this*: *the other, the former, to that*: as, *Athens and Sparta were the chief states of Greece: the one was more renowned for arms, the other for arts. Or, The latter was more renowned for arms, the former for arts.*

EXERCISE CVII.

 Supply the appropriate Adjective or Pronoun:—

England has great advantages for manufacture and commerce; () is facilitated by the extent of her coast and the goodness of her harbours, () by her inexhaustible mines of iron and coal. The boy and the girl have been equally to blame; () committed the fault, () contrived it. The possession of a sound judgment is better than that of wealth; () we may lose through the misconduct of others, but () can be destroyed only by death.

ADJECTIVES.

RULE 7.


299. Every Adjective refers to some Noun, expressed or understood, or to some sentence equivalent to a Noun ; as, *Those good men are happy.*

EXPL.—Here *happy* qualifies the word *men*. So in the sentence, *That he should have refused the appointment, is extraordinary* ; the Adjective *extraordinary* qualifies the foregoing sentence, *That he should have refused the appointment.*

300. RULE 7. A.—When the Noun is not expressed, and the Adjective takes the Definite Article before it, it is termed the Adjective Absolute ; as, *The good are happy.*

EXPL.—Here the word *good* is an Adjective Absolute, having the Noun understood.

EXERCISE CVIII.

 Underline the Adjectives Absolute, and enclose in brackets the other Adjectives :—

The just shall live by faith. Good men love the good. We admire the accomplished, but we love the amiable. I love him because he is brave. The brave are not destitute of a sense of danger, but they have the courage to be superior to it. He is very wicked. Therefore the ungodly shall not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the congregation of the righteous.

Here are the wise, the generous, and the brave.

The just, the good, the worthless, and profane.

The vast immense of space. The lowest deep. And through the palpable obscure, finds out his uncouth way. The righteous shall flourish like a green bay tree.

301. OBS. (1.)—Adjectives Absolute are Singular when they are used instead of Abstract Nouns ; as, *The sublime.*

(2.)—They are usually Plural when they refer to persons ; as, *The good are happy.*

302. RULE 7. B.—*Each, every, either* and *neither*, referring to Nouns in the Singular only, require the Verbs to be Singular; as, *Each person gives a different statement.*

EXPL.—Here the Adjective *each* agrees with the Noun *person* in the singular, and requires the Verb *gives* to be so too. So, *Every day brings further information. Either is good enough.*

EXERCISE CIX.

 Supply appropriate Verbs and Pronouns:—

Every man () now prepared for the worst. Let each esteem others better than (). Either of the houses () large enough for my brother. The Scriptures inform us that every action () good or bad, according to the motive giving rise to (), and not according to () consequences. Every one of his letters () date after his banishment. Let each man look after () own property. Each child () furnished with a book for (). Neither of them () present. Every evening () devoted to study. When every person () arrived, I will go on. Every one () how much more difficult it is to retain in the memory a multitude of things which are unconnected, and lie in confusion, than of those disposed according to a rule or plan.

303. OBS.—*Every* may be followed by a Plural Noun or Adjective, when taken collectively, as *I go to Rome every three years.*

EXPL.—Here, the expression *three years* is taken collectively, as *one* period, and, therefore, allows *every* to precede it.

EXERCISE CX.

 Underline the Nouns to which **EVERY** belongs:—

The President of the United States is chosen every four years. Every fifty men were formed into a company. I visit my friend every few days. The Jewish jubilee was commemorated every fifty years. The census is now taken in England every ten years. It is an error to say that the Aloe blooms but once every hundred years.

304. RULE 7. C.—The Demonstratives must agree in Number with the Nouns to which they refer; as, *This kind of people does not suit me.*

EXPL.—The Noun *kind* being Singular, the Singular *this* is used. *These kind* would, strictly, be incorrect.

305. OBS.—Some good writers use *these kind, these sort, &c.*, understanding *kind, sort, &c.* as Nouns of Multitude. This, however, is a usage to be observed rather than imitated.

EXERCISE CXI.

 Supply the Demonstratives:—

Do give me () books. () notion of things is not correct. () plants of my brother's are valuable. I had hoped by () means to relieve his mind. () sort of proceedings must be discontinued. () are the means of success.

306. RULE 7. D.—Plural Numerals sometimes have Singular Nouns; as, *Ten sail of the line.*


307. OBS.—This occurs in the following cases:—

(1.) Where a part of any thing is used for the whole, as in the example above given, *Ten sail of the line*, where the Noun *sail*, a part only, is used for the whole *ship*.

(2.) With Nouns which express some definite number, and have seldom, or never, a Plural form, as *Three brace of partridges*: where *brace*, which has no Plural form, is significant of number. So, *score, dozen, &c.*

(3.) With the words *foot, pound, pair*, and some others, as *twenty foot deep*. The Plural form of the Noun is now, however, preferable, as *twenty feet deep*.

EXERCISE CXII.


 Make three divisions, A, B, C; place the examples of (1) under A, those of (2) under B, and those of (3) under C:—

Two hundred horse entered the town. I paid him three pound ten six months ago. I sent him three dozen peaches. There are three pair of bellows in the forge. Twenty sail of the line have gone down the channel. He has bought three score of eggs. He has shot fifteen brace in one day. There may have been two hundred head of cattle in the meadow.

308. RULE 7. E.—*Much, little, whole*, are used only with Nouns of QUANTITY; *many, few, several*, with Nouns of NUMBER; and *some, no, all, enough, any*, with Nouns of both QUANTITY and NUMBER; as, *I will not take much luggage. You have many friends.*

EXPL.—Here, *much* relates to the *quantity* of luggage, and *many* to the *number* of friends.

EXERCISE CXIII.


 Make two divisions, A, B; place under A the sentences of quantity, under B those of number. Underline the Adjectives and their Nouns:—

I will take no more fruit to-day. The army wants more men. He has the most glory. Most men would wish to be thought benevolent. All men think all men mortal but themselves. All discord is but harmony not understood. He has little wealth, and less influence. Many churches were burnt down at the fire of London, but more houses. He has a few marbles in his pocket. Some persons are very anxious. I gave him some milk. He had several good paintings. The general has no men. He has no ammunition for his men. The king had had trouble enough. He has books enough.

309. Rule 7. F.—The Adjective *many* is used with a Singular Noun, with the Indefinite Article between them; as, *Many a man was lost.*

310. RULE 7. G.—The Correlative to *such* is *as*; as, *Such men as those are happy.*

EXERCISE CXIV.

 Enclose in brackets the Nouns to which the Adjective *MANY* refers, and supply the Correlative to *such*:—

How many a time have I been relieved by him. Such a scene () this, is too painful for me. Full many a flower is born to blush unseen. By such a temptation () that, many a youth would have fallen. The enemy does not regard such a force () we can bring into the field.

311. RULE 7. H.—The Comparative Degree is used when only *two* objects are compared, the Superlative when more than two; as, *That is the better house of the two. That is the best house in the street.*

EXPL.—In the first sentence, only two objects being compared, *best* would be wrong.

EXERCISE CXV.

 Supply any appropriate Adjectives:—

She is the () of them all. She is the () of the two. Newton and Kepler were both great men, but Newton was the () of the two. Newton was the () of all astronomers. New Holland is the () of all islands. New Holland is () than Great Britain, but the latter is the () of the two.

312. OBS. 1.—*Other*, and the Comparative of simple comparison, are followed by *than*; but the Comparative of selection is followed by *of*; as, *It was no other than your uncle. He is wiser than I am. He is the wiser of the two.*

313. OBS. 2.—In simple sentences, the Superlative Degree is followed by *of*; as, *London is the largest of all cities.* But if a dependent clause (230) follow the Superlative, the Relative *that* must be the first word of the dependent clause; as, *She is the finest ship that I have ever seen.*

EXPL.—The first sentence is a simple one, and the Superlative *largest* is, therefore, followed by *of*: the second has a *dependent clause*, and the Superlative *finest* is, therefore, followed by *that*. (295.)

EXERCISE CXVI.


 Supply the appropriate words:—

He is the best () all brothers. That is the worst of all the actions () he performed. I know John and James; I think John the better () them. I know John, James, and Henry; I think John the best () them. The campaign was more arduous () any other.

314. RULE 7. I.—When a person or thing belonging to a *class* is compared with all others of that class, either the Superlative must be used, or the Comparative with *other*; as, *Solomon was the wisest of all men*; or *Solomon was wiser than all other men*.

EXPL.—*Solomon* is a *person* belonging to a class of men; and in comparing him with that class, the Superlative is used in the first sentence, and the Comparative with *other* in the second. *Solomon was wiser than all men* would be wrong; for he was himself a man, and could not be wiser than himself.

EXERCISE CXVII.


 Change the Superlative into the Comparative, with *other*, or the Comparative with *other*, into the Superlative:—

Caesar was the greatest of all the Roman generals. Deceit is the meanest of all vices. England is the richest of all nations. Venus is the brightest of all the planets. The Severn is larger than all the rivers of England. London is larger than any other capital city of Europe.

315. RULE 7. K.—When different classes are compared, the Comparative only can be used; as, *John is better than his brothers*.

EXPL.—Here, *John* belongs to one class, and *brothers* to another; the Comparative is therefore used. *John is the best of his brothers*, or *John is better than his other brothers*, would be incorrect; for it would be making John his own brother. Milton has, *The fairest of her daughters, Eve*; but this is a classical idiom.

EXERCISE CXVIII.

 Underline the Nouns of different classes, and doubly underline those of the same classes:—

Mary is prettier than her sisters. Hercules was the strongest of all the Greeks. Mont Blanc is the highest mountain of Europe. Socrates was more patient than most men. Carnivorous animals are much fiercer than others.


ARTICLES.

RULE 8.

316.—The Definite Article is used with either Number; as, *The good man. The good men.* The Indefinite with the Singular only; as, *A good man.*

317. EXCEPTION.—The Indefinite Article is used before Plural Nouns preceded by some of the Numerals, by *few*, or by *great many*: as, *A hundred men: a few boys: a great many people.* Such phrases have the sense of a Collective Noun.

EXERCISE CXIX.

 Underline the Articles and their Nouns:—


A clever boy is the pride of his parents. A virtuous woman is the crown of her husband. A great many ships sail to-day. I would have lent him a few pounds. The king sent me a present. Give me a hundred pounds. A thousand men rushed out.

318. OBS.—The sense of a Plural is often expressed by using a Noun Singular with the Adjective *many*, and the Indefinite Article between them; as, *Many a man has been ruined by extravagance*, which means, *Many men have*, &c. (309.)

319. RULE 8. A.—The Definite Article points out some *particular* person or thing; as, *The queen is in town.* The Indefinite is put before Nouns used generally; as, *A lamp gives light.*

EXPL.—In the first sentence, *the* is used, because it points out a particular person,—our own queen. So in the sentence, *The man I saw in the garden has left*, the clause, *I saw in the garden*, limits the word *man* to one particular individual, and no other. But in the second example, the Noun *lamp* is used generally, and is not any particular *lamp* singled out from others, and therefore the Indefinite Article is used.

EXERCISE CXX.

 Supply the appropriate Articles:—

() sun gives light to our earth. He gave me () apple out of the basket. He restored () apple he stole. () lamp is better than a candle (*meaning any lamp*). () lamp is better than a candle (*meaning my lamp*).

320. RULE 8. B.—The Definite Article is used before a Noun when it stands for a whole species made up of distinct individuals; as, *The lion is the strongest of all animals.*

The Article is omitted when it stands for a whole species not made up of distinct individuals; as, *Silver is not so heavy as gold.*

EXPL.—In the first example the word *lion* stands for the whole class of lions, and this class is made up of distinct individuals, and therefore requires the Article before it. So, too, *The oak is a nobler tree than the elm.*

In the second example the word *silver* is used generally; but as the whole is not made up of distinct individuals or parts, the Article is omitted. So, too, *Oak is harder than elm.*

321. EXCEPTION.—The word *man*, used in a general sense, does not take the Article before it, although made up of distinct individuals; as, *Man is born to trouble.*

EXERCISE CXXI.

 Make some short sentences using the following Nouns. Underline them when they represent the whole class:—

Wine, Horse, Metal, Man, Corn, Coal, Crocodile, Sugar.

322. RULE 8. C.—The Indefinite Article is used before the Comparative with *than* (312); as, *He is a wiser man THAN his brother.* The Definite before the Comparative with *of*; as, *He is THE wiser OF the two.*

323. OBS.—The Definite Article before the Comparative limits its meaning more precisely; as, *He said this, that he might appear THE wiser.* So, *I do it THE rather on this account.*


EXERCISE CXXII.

 Supply the appropriate Articles:—

John has () larger property than his sister, but he is not () happier of the two. Mont Blanc is () higher mountain than Jungfrau. This is () better road than the other, but it is () longer of the two.

324. RULE 8. D.—The Indefinite Article FOLLOWS *such, many, what*, and all Adjectives preceded by *too, so, as*, and *how*. The Definite Article follows *all*; as, *Such a friend. That is too flattering an account. All the earth.*

EXERCISE CXXIII.


 Underline the Nouns, and the Adjectives and Articles belonging to them. Enclose the Adverbs in brackets:—

He gave me all the money. What a trouble he makes of such a trifle! That would be too hazardous an undertaking. How timid a creature is the squirrel! It is as large a house as yours. It is not so large a house as yours. I have received from you many a favour. I had never seen so large a man before. I had never seen such a large man before. It was too large a house for him. Many a man has done the same.

325. RULE 8. E.—The Article is omitted before Abstract Nouns used in a general sense; as, *Hardness is a property of some bodies.*

EXPL.—Here the Abstract Noun *hardness* stands alone; the Article is therefore omitted. But when the Abstract Noun has reference to some other Noun, or is limited by an Adjective, the Article generally precedes it; as, *The hardness of iron is not so great as that of the diamond.* Here the Abstract Noun *hardness* is limited to the Noun *iron*, and is on that account preceded by *the*. So, in the sentence, *He has a great knowledge of his subject*, the Abstract Noun *knowledge* has an Adjective, *great*, before it, and therefore admits of the use of the Article.

EXERCISE CXXIV.

 Supply the requisite Articles. *Note.*—An Article is not required between all the parentheses:—

() brightness of the sun was shining round about him.
Some one has said that () royalty is only splendid misery.
() royalty of mind, *that* is royalty (282). ()
magnitude is size. () magnitude of the sun is more than
a million times that of the earth. () dishonesty is a vice.
() dishonesty of the Thessalians was proverbial.

326. RULE 8. F.—The names of PARTICULAR arts, sciences, titles, &c., do not take the Article; as, *Weaving is an ingenious art.*

But some terms, which include SEVERAL arts, sciences, titles, &c., take the Article; as, *The mathematics. The fine arts.*

EXPL.—Weaving is the name of one particular art, and therefore the Article is not used. So *Algebra is arithmetic whose quantities are not definite.* But the term *mathematics* includes several sciences, and therefore takes the Definite Article. The word *Physics* is an exception; for, although it includes several sciences, it does not take the Article before it.


EXERCISE CXXV.

 Supply the requisite Articles. *Note*, as before:—

Do not neglect () classics. I hope you will not neglect () Latin, for you will find it very useful. () painting has been much cultivated in Italy and Flanders. () literature of Germany is highly praised. () literature absorbs his whole attention. () peerage has been increased of late years. He was offered the title of () earl. The property of () impeached earl has been bestowed upon him.

327. OBS.—The omission or insertion of the Indefinite Article before the Adjectives *few*, *little*, *slight*, and words of similar signification, gives a very different meaning to the phrase. Thus, *He has a few good qualities. He has few good qualities.* In the first sentence, we commend him for the presence of some good qualities; in the second, we censure him for their implied absence. When the article is omitted, an emphasis is thrown on the Adjective, thus: *few good qualities* is equivalent to *only a few*, or *but a few good qualities*.

EXERCISE CXXVI.

 Make two sets of sentences like the above, using the phrases, *few books*, *little praise*, *small profit*:—

328. RULE 8. G.—When several Adjectives, qualifying one Noun, refer to the **SAME** person or thing, the Article is used only before the first ; as, *An amiable and intelligent friend is invaluable.*

When the Adjectives refer to **DIFFERENT** persons or things, the Article is used with all of them ; as, *An amiable and an intelligent friend, are worthy of regard.*

EXPL.—The first sentence speaks of *one* friend, who is *both* amiable *and* intelligent. The second speaks of two friends, the one amiable and the other intelligent.

EXERCISE CXXVII.

 Supply the requisite Articles. *Note*, as before :—

() small and () large lion have just arrived.
 () red and () white cow is in the meadow. ()
 red and () white cows are in the meadow. (*Each*
cow being red and white.) () black and ()
 white cows are in the meadow. (*Some quite black and some*
quite white.) () brave and () accomplished
 officer has published () faithful and () in-
 teresting account of the campaign. The boy does not require
 () large and () dictionary.

329. RULE 8. H.—When several Nouns are in Apposition to another Noun, the Article is used with only the first of them ; as, *Caesar, the Consul and Dictator, was killed by Brutus.*

But if the Nouns refer to *different* persons, the Article must be repeated ; as, *Cincinnatus, the Dictator, and the Master of the Horse, marched against the enemy.*


EXPL.—In the first sentence *Consul* and *Dictator* are in Apposition to *Caesar*, both meaning the same person. The Article therefore is used with only the first. In the second, the *Dictator* and the *Master of the Horse* are two different persons; the article therefore is used with both. If *the* had been omitted before *Master*, it would have meant that Cincinnatus filled two offices, that of Dictator, and that of Master of the Horse.

330. RULE 8. I.—When two Nouns, both meaning the SAME person or thing, follow a Comparative, the Article is omitted before the second; as, *He is a better statesman than soldier.*

But if the Nouns mean DIFFERENT persons or things, the Article must be used with both; as, *He is a better statesman than a soldier.*

EXPL.—In the first sentence it is asserted that the *same* individual is better in one capacity, that of a statesman, than he is in another, that of a soldier. The second sentence speaks of *two* persons, the one (*he*) being *a better statesman* than the other (*a soldier*) is.

EXERCISE CXXVIII.

 Underline those Nouns which refer to the same person or thing, doubly underline those which refer to different persons or things:—

He is more of a scholar than divine. He is more of a scholar than a divine. She has more discretion than genius. She has more discretion than a genius. Vitellius was a more renowned epicure than emperor. Cincinnatus was a more renowned personage than an emperor.

331. OBS. 1.—When, in a series of Nouns, some would require *an* and others *a*, the Article is repeated with each Noun; as, *A baron, an earl, and a duke, were present, not a baron, earl, and duke.*

332. OBS. 2.—Adjectives used absolutely (300) require the Definite Article before them; as, *The wise and the good. Burke wrote a treatise on the Sublime and Beautiful.*

ADVERBS.

RULE 9.

333.—Adverbs are usually placed next the words they qualify, before Adjectives, after Verbs, and between the Auxiliary and the Participle; as, *He lives in a very large house, and pays dearly for it, although he has lately sustained a most serious loss.*

EXERCISE CXXIX.

 Supply any appropriate Adverbs:—

My brother is () rich. I am () pleased with you. I walk (). Homer's Iliad has been () read. The boy was () beaten. If the letter be () written, send it. The result might have been () different. The letter having been () written, was sent () without delay. The youth has been () brought up. Unhappiness must () accompany wickedness. He learns ().

334. RULE 9. A.—The Adverb does not often separate the Verb and its Objective; as, *He told his story truly.*

EXPL.—*He told truly his story* would not be correct.

335. RULE 9. B.—When a whole sentence is qualified, or great emphasis is intended, the Adverb is often put first; as, *Unfortunately, he thinks too highly of himself.*


EXPL.—Here the Adverb *unfortunately* qualifies the whole sentence, and therefore stands at the beginning. So in the sentence *He was rewarded, not with worldly wealth, but with a good conscience*, the Adverb *not* does not qualify the Verb *was rewarded*, but the clause, *with worldly wealth*, and therefore precedes it. This construction must be well marked. In the sentence *never can virtue sanction vice*, the *never* is much more emphatic than in the sentence *virtue can never sanction vice*.

336. RULE 9. C.—The Interrogative Adverbs *how, when, where, why*, are always the first words in a question; as, *When will you go?*

337. RULE 9. D.—The Adverbs *never, sometimes, always, often, &c.*, are generally placed before the Verbs they qualify, except the Verb *to be*; as, *He always walks before dinner. He is always good-natured.*

338. OBS.—When the Participle is preceded by two or three Auxiliaries, the Adverb is placed immediately before the Participle, or between the Auxiliaries, according to the word it more especially qualifies; as, *He has been unceasingly pursued by his enemies. He has lately been engaged in his new undertaking.* In the first sentence, the Adverb *unceasingly* qualifies the word *pursued*, and is therefore next it; in the second, it has reference to *time*, and is therefore next the word *has*, which marks the tense or time of the Verb.

EXERCISE CXXX.

 Underline the Adverbs, and doubly underline the words they qualify:—

The master taught the boy very well. How do you do? Undoubtedly, the statement he has made is incorrect. He is dismissed, not for his dishonesty, but for his idleness. I was never in Paris. He always comes late. Where shall we find truth? The Pacha has been entirely defeated; he has not been driven back before. I care not for his wealth or his power. I care, not for his wealth, but for his reputation. Still shall her streamers float on the breeze. I remember him well.

My friends, do they now and then send

A wish or a thought after me?

Oh! tell me I yet have a friend,

Though a friend I am never to see.


They would have been well satisfied. This has often been said. Such things may often have been done before. The field, having been well tilled, will now yield a good crop. How strangely are the opinions of men altered by time!

339. RULE 9. E.—*Only* is generally placed after the Noun or Pronoun which it qualifies, and before the Adjective, Adverb, or Verb; as, *To man only has been given the power of speech. The teacher is only strict, not severe.*

EXPL.—In the first sentence *only* qualifies the Noun *man*, and is put after it; in the second, it qualifies the Adjective *strict*, and is put before it. So, *My brother can only read, he cannot write*; as *only* qualifies the Verb, it comes before it.

340. OBS.—*Only*, qualifying a clause or phrase, is put before it. (335.) Thus, *I have seen the castle, but only at a distance.* Here *only*, qualifying the phrase *at a distance*, is put before it. Sometimes *only* is an Adjective; as, *An only child.*

EXERCISE CXXXI.

 Underline the words to which *only* relates. Enclose it in brackets when an Adjective;—

England is not only opulent, but powerful. England only has possessions in South Africa. Ranges of mountains are not found only on the western parts of a country, but they are mostly there. England only performs her duty, in aiming at the improvement of the world. England is not the only nation that aims at bettering mankind. Italy, says Coleridge, has every gift of God, only not freedom. I only am left.

341. RULE 9. F.—*Here, there, where*, are generally better than *hither, thither, whither*, with Verbs of motion; as, *Come here. Go there.*

342. OBS. 1.—*Hither, thither, whither*, which were used formerly, are now considered stiff and inelegant.

343. OBS. 2.—*Hence, thence, whence*, although by themselves they express motion from, sometimes have the Preposition before them; as, *he came thence*, or, *he came from thence*. Instead of *hence*, &c., we may also say, *from here*, &c. In questions, the Prep. goes at the end. So, *WHERE did you come FROM?*

344. RULE 9. G.—Two negatives convey the sense of an affirmative; as, *It is not unfair.*

EXPL.—This means, *It is fair.*

345. RULE 9. H.—Some Adverbs are used as Adjectives; as, *The above discourse. After ages.*

346. OBS.—This usage has sometimes been reprobated, but without just ground; it is found in our best writers, and accords with the general analogy of language.

347. CAUTION.—Never use Adjectives as Adverbs. Say, *The girl speaks distinctly, not distinct.*

348. RULE 9. I.—An Adjective follows a Neuter Verb, when it qualifies the Noun which precedes the Verb, and not the Verb itself; as, *The fields look green.*

EXPL.—Here *green* qualifies *fields*, not *look*.

349. OBS.—Use the Adjective and not the Adverb, when you can change the Verb into the corresponding part of the Verb *to be*. So, *The fields look green*, might be, *The fields are green.*

He looks *cold*; } but, { He looks *coldly* on us.
The air felt *keen*; }

EXERCISE CXXXII.

 (a) Give the more usual form of these sentences:—

Why are ye come hither? Thy servant went no whither. The king proceeded thither. Whence are ye come? He goes hence to Bath. They could proceed thence alone.

(b) Change the double negative into affirmative sentences:—

Do not be insincere. Let me wander not unseen. He was not unable to come; he was unwilling. Do not be undecided. He was neither uninvited nor unwelcome.

(c) Supply the appropriate words.—*Note.* Sometimes Adverbs are required: sometimes Adjectives:—

They would have spoken very (). If he do not come (), I shall have left. The soldiers would fight (). The violet smells (). The fire burns (). The stars shine (). The iron feels (). My sister is pretty. My sister looks (). My friend should appear (), on account of his good fortune. The clouds look () with rain. The thunder rolled () and the lightning flashed (). The sea looks () in the deepest parts.

VERBS.

350. A verb must agree with its Nominative in Number and Person (241, &c.).

351. OBS.—The Verbs *need* and *dare* are found without the *s* in the third singular ; as, *He need not go ; She dare not come.*

RULE 10.

352.—Neuter Verbs of motion generally take the Auxiliary *be*, instead of *have* ; as, *He is come.*

EXPL.—We might say, *He has come* ; but the meaning would not be quite the same. *He HAS come* calls attention to the fact of his *having* come : *he IS come*, to the fact of his *being* here.

EXERCISE CXXXIII.

 Supply the appropriate Auxiliaries:—*Note.* Some of the Verbs do not admit of the Verb *to be*.

The messengers () returned. The vessel () arrived. The boy () walked fast. Your father () now gone. I () slept soundly. Your friend () not come. You () arisen. Your friend () retired from the contest.

353. CAUTION.—Never use Neuter Verbs for their corresponding Active Verbs, or the reverse. Say, *The book lies on the table*, not *lays*.

EXPL.—*Lays* is Active. A person *lays* a book on the table, but the book *lies* on the table.

EXERCISE CXXXIV.

 Supply the appropriate Verbs:—

(NEUTER.) *Rise, Lie, Fall, Sit.* (ACTIVE.) *Raise, Lay, Fell, Set.*

The children () into the pond. The gardener will () the trees to-day. My brother was () on the chair. We had () a trap for the birds. They have () the fare by that coach. () your left foot. The thermometer will then have been () for three hours. He had been () on the grass. Our fowls () eggs now every day. () those books down. () down. When do you mean to () those trees ? Let it () there. He () in bed late.

354. RULE 10. A.—Some Verbs are both Active and Neuter; as, *He broke the glass; The glass broke.*

EXPL.—In the first sentence *broke* is Active, or Transitive, as the action of breaking passes over to the object *glass*. In the second sentence *broke* is Neuter, or Intransitive, as the action of *breaking* is confined to the subject *glass*, and does not pass over to any object. (104.)

EXERCISE CXXXV.

 Underline the Actives: doubly underline the Neuters:—

Move the coat from this chair. The moon moves round the earth. The fire has been burning a long while. The fire burnt the house down. I wish you would turn the dog out of the garden. The wheel was turning quickly. They sank the enemy's ships. The enemy's ships sank.

355. RULE 10. B.—Neuter Verbs admit an Objective after them, of a Noun of similar signification; as, *I ran a race.*

EXPL.—Here the Neuter Verb, *ran*, is followed by the Noun, *race*, in the Objective Case. (103.)

EXERCISE CXXXVI.

 Underline the Neuter Verbs and their Objectives:—

All must sleep the sleep of death. He had lived a life of benevolence. Pharaoh dreamed a dream. The emigrant looked a last fond look at his native land. Let me die the death of the righteous. I have fought a good fight.

RULE 11.

356. Some Verbs must be followed by particular Prepositions; as, *He never swerves from the line of duty.*

EXPL.—Such Verbs are called Preposition Verbs. They have the power of Active Verbs; thus *line* is in the Objective, governed by the Preposition Verb *swerves from*. They may be made Passive, like Active Verbs; as, *The line of duty must not be swerved from.* So, *No one likes to be laughed at.* (380.)

RULE 12.

357. (1.) The INDICATIVE Mood is used when a sentence is simply declarative; as, *When one angle of a triangle is right, the remaining two are acute.*

(2.) The SUBJUNCTIVE is used when the Verb expresses supposition, or uncertainty connected with futurity; as, *If one angle of a triangle BE right, the remaining two are acute.*

EXPL.—Here the sentence does not *assert* that one angle is right, but merely says what will follow on the *supposition* of its being so; and accordingly the verb is in the Subjunctive.

358. OBS. 1.—The Subjunctive is generally preceded by the Conjunction, *if, that, though, lest, till, except, provided, whether, so*; the Adverb *ere* or *before*; or by a word ending in *ever*; as, *whoever, however.*

359. OBS. 2.—The Subjunctive does not *always* follow these Conjunctions, but only when a thing is represented as doubtful or future; thus, in the sentence, *If it RAIN to-morrow, I cannot come*, doubt is implied as to whether it will rain or not; but in this sentence, *If he CALLS it cold now, in October, what will he call it in January?* there is no doubt expressed at all; it is implied that he *does* call it cold now, and therefore the Verb is in the Indicative. The sentence is equivalent to, *Since, or seeing that, he calls it cold now, what will he call it in January?*

EXERCISE CXXXVII.

 (*) Underline the Subjunctives and their Nominatives, and enclose the Indicatives in brackets:—

If he receive me kindly, I shall ever esteem him. I can give no answer, until she decide. Unless she exert herself, she will not succeed. If my friend's rudeness displeases me, your deceitfulness does so in a much higher degree. Though he falls down, as you say, frequently, he has a knack of getting up again. Wherever they be, they are not forgetful of us.

Ere the morning's busy ray
 Call you to your work away,
 Ere the silent evening close
 Your wearied eyes in sweet repose,
 To lift your heart and voice in prayer,
 Be your first and latest care;
 And oh! where'er your days be past,
 And oh! howe'er your lot be cast,
 Still think on Him whose eye surveys,
 Whose hand is over all your ways.

(b) Supply the appropriate forms of suitable Verbs:—

If the world () better a century hence, it must be attributed to the spread of civilization and religion. Though he () me, yet will I trust in him. I do not trust him, although he () it again. I will not trust him, although he () it again. If the world () you, ye know that it hated me. Whether he () praise or blame, he will pursue the course of rectitude. If he () lived reputably, help him (*that is, referring to his present habit of life*). If he () reputably, help him (*referring to his life in coming periods*). If he () me, I am happy (*present habit*). If he () me, I shall be happy (*future conduct*). How shall I act if he () me? Do not offend lest thou () deserted. All depends on his future behaviour; if he () industrious he will succeed, though he () only moderate talents; if he () his time and his money he will fail, even though his father () him assistance. However he (), do not refuse him. Wherever he () I shall accompany him. I shall be satisfied whichever he ().

360. OBS.—The Past Subjunctive is often used without a Conjunction, the order of the Nominative and Verb being inverted (252-6); as, *Had he been there, all would have been well*. This is equivalent to, *If he had been there, &c.* The Past Potential is used in the same way. These sentences have a negative force; they *suppose* what did not *actually* occur. (370.)

EXERCISE CXXXVIII.

 Invert the following sentences in the same way:—


If he had done so, all would have been well. If she were prudent, she would be happy. If they had known it, they would have let me know. If he could come, he would.

RULE 13.

361. The Imperative is sometimes used Absolutely ; as, *Bring some money ; say, ten pounds.*

EXPL.—Here the Verb *say* is the Imperative Absolute, not being supposed to have any Nominative. (Compare 366, 376.)

EXERCISE CXXXIX.

 Underline the Imperatives Absolute :—


If he receive an increase of wages, suppose of 10s. a week, he will still be in poverty. Recal any recollection of the past, say of the most trivial thing, and it will be important or not, according to its associations. Grant this, what follows?

RULE 14.

362. A Verb is governed in the Infinitive by a Verb, a Noun, or an Adjective ; as, *He delights to please you ; It is his delight to please you ; It is delightful to please you.*

EXPL.—In all these sentences, the Verb *to please* is in the Infinitive ; but in the first it is governed by the Verb *delights*, in the second by the Noun *delight*, and in the third by the Adjective *delightful*.

EXERCISE CXL.

 Underline the Infinitives, and doubly underline the words governing them :—

He is said to be learned. My friend wishes me to undertake this journey. Obedience ought to be prompt. The new world ought to have been named after Columbus. He appears to have abounded in riches. The telescope is said to have been invented by Jansen. The corn is ready to be cut. His ambition is, to excel all others in those qualities of mind and heart, which ought to command respect and affection. It is as much the happiness, as the duty of mankind, to adore their Creator. He is reported to have said all I have told you. He will no longer be able to escape. I should be anxious to do so.


363. OBS.—Some phrases admit of the Infinitive Active, or of the Infinitive Passive being used. We may say, *A house to let*, or, *A house to be let* ; *This was not a thing to commend* (that is, for any one to commend), or, *to be commended*.

364. RULE 14. A.—Except when Passive, the Verbs *behold, bid, dare* (neuter), *feel, find, hear, know, let, make, need, observe, perceive, see, have*, are usually followed by the Infinitive without *to* ; as, *I saw the sun rise*.

EXPL.—Here *rise* is Infinitive ; but, being governed by the Active Verb *see*, is without the *to*. But after the Passive, the *to* must be used ; as, *The sun was seen to rise with splendour*.

365. OBS.—Some of these Verbs, especially *know* and *have*, sometimes take the *to* in the Active ; as, *I know it to be true*.

EXERCISE CXLI.

 Supply suitable Infinitives ; underline the Verbs governing them :— *Note*. Not all the Infinitives require *to*.

I heard him () that it was true. He can see the enemy (). The nightingale might be heard () very sweetly. Bid her () that book. I dare him () that again. She would have made him () it, had he been present. I have observed him () very discreetly. I dare not () that. The soldiers were bid by Cromwell () away the Speaker's mace. The pain was felt () acute. No nation has been found () ancient Greece in the Fine Arts. Let me (). I know him () great talents. I have known him () great self-control. Queen Elizabeth was known () great vigour of mind. The comets have been observed () in very elliptical orbits. You will perceive the moon () a different place among the stars every successive night.

366. RULE 14. B.—The Infinitive is sometimes used Absolutely ; as, *To tell you the truth, I have no high opinion of him*.

EXPL.—Here *to tell* is the Infinitive Absolute, not being governed by any other word.

EXERCISE CXLII.

 Underline the Infinitives Absolute :—

To continue, I will now shew the consequence of my argument. To be candid with you, I think you are wrong. To begin, I must inform you that I left town yesterday. And now, to conclude, let us see why you ought to obey him.

367. CAUTION.—Never use *for* before the Infinitive. Say *He came to tell me*, not *for to tell me*.

368. OBS.—Here *to tell* may be called the Infinitive of *purpose*, which is used Absolutely. It is equivalent to *that he might tell*. The use of *for* in this construction was once allowable. Our old writers and the authorized translation of the Bible abound in instances of it. But the usage is now quite obsolete.

369. RULE 14. C.—The Infinitive INDEFINITE expresses what is PRESENT or FUTURE to the time of its governing verb: the Infinitive COMPLETE, what is PRIOR to it; as, *He compels me to praise him*.

EXPL.—Here the act of praising is present or future, as regards the compulsion, and therefore the Infinitive INDEFINITE is used. But *He supposed me to have praised him*. Here the praising is prior to the supposing, and requires, therefore, the Infinitive COMPLETE.

EXERCISE CXLIII.

 Supply proper Infinitives:—

I believe him () a good man. I ordered him () me a coach. I supposed him () by the early coach. I wished him () by the early coach. He appeared () a sensible letter. He ought () at once. He ought () yesterday. I desired him () a journal as soon as he shall return.

370. OBS.—Some writers use the Infinitive Complete to express a negative sense; as, *I intended to have done it*. *I intended to do it*, would simply state my *intention* to do it, without giving any hint as to whether I *did* actually do it or not; but *I intended to have done it* implies that I *did not* do it. Thus it is not incorrect to say *He meant to have come yesterday*, provided that he did not come. The words *should*, *would*, *ought*, &c., always have this construction. It may be stated thus: the Infinitive Complete expresses a supposition, or case, or intention, opposed to the actual fact. (Compare 360.)

RULE 15.

371. Verbs that depend on one another must be put in corresponding tenses ; as, *After I had left, he went away.*


EXPL.—Here the first action, that of leaving, was finished before the other, that of going, was begun. We therefore use the Past Complete Tense *HAD left*. So

I SAY that I WILL go, if I BE able, or, if I CAN.
I SAID that I WOULD go, if I WERE able, or, if I COULD.
I SAID that I WOULD HAVE gone, if I HAD been able, or, if I COULD HAVE done so.

372. OBS. 1.—All the Auxiliaries of the Potential may express a present and future time ; as, *He should go to-morrow.*

373. OBS. 2.—In order to represent a Past or Future action more vividly, the Present tense is frequently used in the sense of a Past or of a Future ; as (PAST), *Bonaparte crosses the Alps, and marches against the Austrians.* This use of the Present abounds in historical and narrative composition, and is called the Historical Present. So (FUTURE), *He goes to-morrow.*

EXERCISE CXLIV.

 **(a)** Supply the appropriate Auxiliaries and Tenses, using any suitable principal Verbs :—

He told me he () come, if he (). He tells me he () come, if he (). The army () before the enemy came up. If he might come, he () behave better. When he should have arrived, he () not left. I know he would come, if he () time. I know he will come, when he () time. Were my means greater, I () give more. Had my means been greater, I () given more. (360.)

(b) Turn the following sentences into the equivalent Past or Future respectively :—

He starts for York next week. They leave town for Brighton in about three days. The holidays begin in three weeks. Pompey is defeated and flees into Egypt. After the expulsion of the Tarquins two consuls are created. They arrive to-night. While I was playing, she comes in and tells me all about it.

RULE 16.

374. Verbs which have the same Nominatives and Tenses must have the same form ; as, *He liveth and reigneth* ; or, *He lives and reigns*.

EXPL.—It must not be *he liveth and reigns*, or, *he lives and reigneth* ; for as the Verbs belong to one sentence, and have the same Nominative, *he*, and the same Tense, the Present, the same form, either that in *th* or that in *s*, must be used with both.

EXERCISE CXLV.

 Supply any appropriate Verbs :—


She () and () daily. God () and () prayer (*use form in th*). He () redeemed us from slavery, and () made us happy. Whom () he left, and why () he gone?

RULE 17.

375. Mere *futurity* is expressed by *shall* in the first person, and by *will* in the second and third ; the *determination* of the speaker by *will* in the first and *shall* in the second and third ; as, *I WILL go to-morrow, I SHALL go to-morrow*.

EXPL.—The first sentence simply expresses a future event ; the second expresses my determination.

EXERCISE CXLVI.

 Underline the sentences implying the determination of the speaker :—


I shall have left. You will come soon. You shall come soon. The boy will learn. The boy shall learn. Do not tell me he will go ; he shall go. Will the boy have learnt his lesson by then ? He shall have learnt it. The corn will have been cut down by the end of the month. By then we shall have received the parcel. We shall not have gone before you return. We will not go before you return. You shall go.

RULE 18.

376. The Participle is often used Absolutely; as, *Calculating roughly, it will cost five pounds.*

EXPL.—Here *calculating*, not agreeing with, or depending on, any other word, is said to be used Absolutely. So many words commonly called Prepositions, such as *touching, respecting, according to, &c.*, are in reality Participles Absolute; as, *Concerning that business, I must be silent.*

EXERCISE CXLVII.


 Underline the Participles when used Absolutely:—

Telling you truly, I am not receiving more. Speaking carelessly, he is somewhere in Shropshire. Betraying no confidence, I may inform you of this. Setting aside this, he has not acted as he should. Granting what you say, my argument still holds. While running, he slipped and fell.

377. CAUTION.—Never use the Past Tense for the Past Participle, or the Past Participle for the Past Tense. The Participle is used after *be* and *have*; as, *The river is frozen over.*

EXPL.—Here *frozen*, the Past Participle, is used after *is*, a part of the Verb *to be*. *Froze*, the Past Tense, would be incorrect. So, *He ran fast*; the Past Participle *run* would be improper.

EXERCISE CXLVIII.

 Supply the proper forms from appropriate Verbs:—

The cup would have been () by the fall. He let the glass fall and () it. I () across the river. I could have () across the river sooner than you. The snake was () to approach. I () the snake approach. Bonaparte () his march before the allies. The march was () before April. She can () the song very sweetly. The song has been () sweetly. He () the bell very violently. The bell was () violently. The murderer was () at the Old Bailey. The bacon was () up in the kitchen. I have () a letter to my friends. I () a letter to my friends. She () in bed too late. She has () in bed nine hours.

- PREPOSITIONS.


Prepositions govern the Objective Case. (257.)

RULE 19.

378. The Objective alone is often used in a sense equivalent to the Objective with the Preposition *to* or *for* ; as, *Send him a turkey.*

EXPL.—This is equivalent to, *Send a turkey to him.*—This usage is found especially after Verbs which imply *giving, paying, telling.*

EXERCISE CXLIX.

 Change the following simple Objectives into Objectives with the Preposition, as above explained :—

He purchased me a horse. I will give her a book. You must enclose him a remittance. He will forward thee thy parcel. I bought them their estate. I threw him an apple. He has procured me a situation. We have been writing them a letter. I promised I would write him a letter every week, if I could. I shall have finished my letter by the time you have brought me the message. They should have told him the truth.

379. OBS.—These expressions, in fact, contain the remains of the old Dative Case ; but as we have no other Datives, and as the words have the same form as in the Objective, they are spoken of as Objectives.

380. RULE 19. A.—Certain words must be followed by particular Prepositions ; as, *I confide in your promise.*

EXPL.—Here the Verb *confide* is followed by *in* ; no other Preposition, as *to*, *on*, or *through*, would be proper.

381. OBS.—Generally, Derivatives are followed by the same Preposition as their Roots ; as *rely upon*, or, *reliance upon*. But there are some exceptions : we say, for instance, *independent of*, *not on* ; *derogatory to*, *not from* ; and so of some others.

382. CAUTION.—Never say, *different to*.—It must be, *similar to* ; *different from*.

Abhorrence of	Endowed, Endued, with
Abound in	Enjoin upon
Abridge of	Exception to
Accede to	Exclusive of
Accord(<i>neuter</i>) with, (<i>active</i>) to	Fall under, from, upon
Accuse of, by	Fawn upon, on
Acquiesce in	Foreign, Opposite, to
Adapt to	Frown at, on
Adequate to	Greedy after, of
Admonish, Remind, Warn, of	Ignorant of
Affinity to, between	Inculcate on, upon
Agreeable to	Independent of
Alienate from	Initiate into, in
Ambitious of	Inseparable from
Antipathy to, against	Intent upon, on
Attend (<i>listen</i>) to, (<i>wait</i>) upon	Inured to
Averse from, to	Militate against
Avert from	Mistrustful of
Bestow upon, on	Overwhelmed with, by
Boast of	Prejudice against
Blush at	Prejudicial to
Call upon, on	Proud, Glad, of
Clear of, from	Pursuance of
Compatible with [<i>verse</i>], with	Pursuant to
Confer (<i>bestow</i>) on, upon (<i>con-</i>	Recreant from
Confide in	Reflect upon, on
Conformable, Congenial, to	Rejoice, Grieve at
Consonant to, with	Relevant, Indifferent, to
Convince of	Rely upon, on
Correspond with, to	Replete with
Deficient in	Repine at
Depend upon, on	Significant of
Derogate from	Smile at, upon, on
Derogatory to	Sympathize with
Devolve on, upon	Taste of, for
Differ with, from	Thirst for, after
Different from, Similar to	Triumph over
Diminution of	True to
Discouragement to	Trust in, to
Dissent from, Assent to	Versed in
Distinguished from	Wait upon, on, at, for
Enamoured of	Want, Deficiency, of
Endeared to	Worthy, Guilty, of

883. **Obs.**—Some words, which are sometimes **Prepositions**, are at other times **Conjunctions** or **Adverbs**; as, *for, till, since, &c.*

EXERCISE CL.

 (a) Supply suitable **Prepositions**: underline the **Preposition**. **Verbs**: doubly underline them when **Passive**:—

He ought to be well versed () Latin. That is a different account () what you gave. I would act conformably () my mother's wishes. He is accused () robbery () the person who was robbed. She has a taste () poetry. The regiment leaves to-morrow, pursuant () orders. Reflect () the future. I left him overwhelmed () joy. Wait () him soon. I shall be rejoiced () your good fortune. That is derogatory () his dignity. I will attend () your advice. The maid attends () her mistress. I will correspond () you. The estate was conferred () him. Let us not repine () misfortune. I ought to confer () you respecting that. I hope the evil will be averted () you. He is ambitious () reputation. I called () my mother yesterday. The enemy may fall () them, and cut them off. This has not fallen () my notice. The man who falls () virtue, falls () happiness. Success is incompatible () indolence. You are deficient () courage, though you boast () your exploits. I am dependent () my own exertions. No man is independent () others. I was frowned () because I differed () him. He knows that the measure will militate () his interest. He who trusts () his Creator, is true () himself. She smiled () her brother for his simplicity. Fortune smiles () the industrious.

(b) Underline the words *for, &c.*, when **Prepositions**; doubly underline them when **Conjunctions** or **Adverbs**:—

Send for him. Wait till the evening; for I am busy now. Till he came, I was in great anxiety. After he arrived, he explained the cause of his delay. I expect him soon after dusk. Since his departure, I have heard nothing of him. Since you have acted in this way, what am I to do? Ere daybreak the siege began. Get everything ready ere I come. He came before the sun rose. Since then, until now, the house has been building. He came before sunrise.

384. RULE 19. B.—With **VERBS OF MOTION**, *to* or *for* is used before places generally; as, *He goes to London to-morrow; I shall sail for Rotterdam next week.*

385. RULE 19. C.—With **Verbs of REST**, *in* is generally used before countries, counties, districts, and capitals; *at* before small towns or villages; as, *He is in America; I saw her at Penshurst.*

EXERCISE CLI.

 (*) Supply the appropriate Prepositions:—

He will travel () London by coach. He is now () Newark. My friend resides () Spain. I hope to visit him () Seville next summer. The summer () England is not so hot as () France. He resides () Walworth. They must sail to-morrow () Lisbon. I shall visit him () Leghorn. They would have arrived () Kingston, but for contrary winds. The book was printed () Paris. The giraffe is found () central and south Africa.

(b) State why the Prepositions in *Italic* are used:—

What part of the country is he living *in*? John Selden, the great lawyer, was born *at* the village of Salvington, *in* Sussex. I was very much pleased with the neighbourhood he lives *in*. Was your friend born *in* India? Yes; he was born *at* Calcutta. He has a large estate *in* Yorkshire. He lives *at* York.

386. OBS. 1.—The sense of an **Adverb** is often expressed by an **Adjective**, or **Noun**, preceded by a **Preposition**; as, *in general*, that is, *generally*: so, *at least*; *without doubt*, *beyond a question* (= *undoubtedly*, *unquestionably*). These are termed **Adverbial phrases**.

387. OBS. 2.—*Between* is used only in reference to two objects; *among*, in reference to more than two; as, *He went between the two trees; He went among the trees of the wood.*—*Between* is from *by twain*. (S. 152): *among* (S. 106).

CONJUNCTIONS.

RULE 20.

388. Certain Conjunctions are followed by certain other Conjunctions, as their Correlatives ; as, *Either he or I will come.*

EXPL.—Here *either* is followed by its Correlative, *or*.

EITHER....OR.	<i>He will either come or stay away.</i>
WHETHER...OR.	<i>I cannot tell whether he or I will come.</i>
NEITHER ..NOR.	<i>I saw neither the boy nor the girl.</i>
THOUGH ..YET.	<i>Though he slay me, yet will I trust in him.</i>
AS.....AS.	<i>He is as good as she.</i> (Comparison of equality.)
AS.....SO.	<i>As he is, so will you be.</i> (Comparison of similarity.)
So.....AS.	<i>He is not so rich as I.</i> (Comparison of quantity.)
.....	<i>He was so kind as to inform me.</i> (Consequence before Infinitive.)
So.....THAT.	<i>Alexander was so powerful, that he overturned a vast empire.</i> } Consequence with all Moods, except Infinitive.
BOTH.....AND.	<i>Both you and he were here.</i>

389. OBS. 1.—Other Negatives besides *neither* are sometimes followed by *nor* ; as, *He is not industrious, nor is he amiable.*

390. OBS. 2.—*Yet* is often omitted after *though* ; as, *Though he was powerful, he was not happy.*

391. CAUTION.—Never use *as* for *that* in the phrase *Not that I know.*—*As* would be very wrong.

EXERCISE CLII.


 Supply the appropriate Conjunctions :—

Either you () I must leave. Neither you () I can go. The Thames is not so large () the Rhine. Our first rate men-of-war are so large () they hold a thousand men. He is as bold () a lion. As his conduct is, () will his desert be. The Athenians were so vain () to call themselves earth-born. Do not go () send. He never tires () stops to rest.

392. RULE 20. A.—The Conjunction *that* is often omitted; as, *He knows (that) I must go.*

393. OBS.—We may omit the *that* after Verbs of *telling, hearing, knowing*, and the like; where the *that* clause stands as an Objective to the Verb. (255.) But when *that* means *in order that*, it cannot be omitted. We may say, *He knows he might do it*; but we must say, *He came THAT he might do it.*

EXERCISE CLIII.

 (a) Insert the Conjunction **THAT** where omitted:—

He says you could have done it, if you had tried. He promises me he will come to-morrow. He might have known it would be so. I told you it would rain. It was supposed there would be a war. We hope you will exert yourself.

(b) Omit the Conjunction **THAT** where you can:—

He says that he will come soon. I find that he is gone. I write now, that you may hear in time. He tells me that you are going to Paris. I am sure that he will act properly. I hear that you have seen her. He came that he might see her.

INTERJECTIONS.

RULE 21.

394. (1.) In PHRASES, the Interjection is followed by the Objective of the first Personal Pronoun, and the Nominative of the second; as, *Ah me! Ah! thou unlucky one!*

(2.) In SENTENCES, the Interjection does not affect the construction; as, *Oh! I am unhappy.*

395. OBS.—*Oh* is often followed by *for*, implying a wish or longing for any thing; as, *Oh! for the balmy breath of spring! So—*

Oh! for the crags that are wild and majestic,
The steep, frowning glories of dark Loch-na Garr!

EXERCISE CLIV.

 Supply the appropriate Pronouns:—

Oh! (1st person sing.) Oh! () foolish ones. Good bye! () merry one. Heigh ho! () am so tired. Welcome! () wanderers! Alas! () am forsaken. Oh! () will be merry then.

PARSING.

396. Parsing is the taking of sentences to pieces, reducing them to their several *parts* (L. 307), or analysing them, and accounting for each word.

397. *Obs.*—All the preceding Exercises may be used as Parsing Exercises. Teachers will find Exercises XXXI., XXXII., XXXIII., XXXIV., LXIX., XCI., CXX., CXXXII., CXXXIV., CXXXV., CXXXVII., CXL., CXLI., CXLVI., CXLVIII., CL., especially adapted for that purpose, as containing the various forms of the Verb in great abundance. The last two or three sentences in most of the Exercises have been made with a special view to the purposes of Parsing.

398. ORDER OF PARSING.

NOUNPart of Speech. Common or Proper. Gender. Number. Case. Government, &c. Rule.

PRONOUN ..Part of Speech. Person. Gender. Number. Case. Government, &c. Rule.

VERBPart of Speech. Weak or Strong. Mood. Tense. Number. Person. Government, &c. Rule.

SPECIMENS OF PARSING.

399. A.—The following is the form in which a sentence should be parsed :—

AS I WAS WALKING THIS MORNING IN THE GREAT YARD THAT BELONGS TO MY FRIEND'S COUNTRY-HOUSE, I WAS WONDERFULLY PLEASED TO SEE THE DIFFERENT WORKINGS OF INSTINCT IN A HEN FOLLOWED BY A BROOD OF DUCKS. THE YOUNG UPON THE SIGHT OF A FOND IMMEDIATELY RAN INTO IT; WHILE THE STEP-MOTHER, WITH ALL IMAGINABLE ANXIETY, HOVERED ABOUT THE BORDERS OF IT, TO CALL THEM OUT OF AN ELEMENT THAT APPEARED TO HER SO DANGEROUS AND DESTRUCTIVE.

As. Adv.—I, pron., pers. 1st pers., com., sing., nom. to *was walking*.—WAS. Auxil., to *walking*.—WALKING. Participl. incomp.—WAS WALKING. Verb, weak, neut., indic., past incomp., sing., 1st, agreeing with I, by Rule 1.—THIS. Pron., demon. adj., sing., agreeing with *morning*, by Rule 7. C.—MORNING. Noun, com., neut., sing., obj., by Rule 2. D.—IN. Prep.—THE. Art., def., agreeing with *yard* by Rule 8.—YARD. Noun, com., neut., sing., obj., governed by *in*, by Rule 2. C.—THAT. Pron. rel., neut., sing., agreeing with *yard*, by Rule 6.; nom. to *belongs*, by Rule 6. I.—BELONGS. Verb, weak, neut., indic., pres. indef., sing., 3rd, agreeing with *that*, by Rule 1.—TO. Prep.—MY. Pron., pos. adj.—FRIEND'S. Noun com., sing., pos., by Rule 3.—COUNTRY-HOUSE. Noun, com., neut., sing., obj., governed by *to*, by Rule 2. C.—(I) WAS. Auxy. to *pleased*.—WONDERFULLY. Adv. qualifying *was pleased* between *was* and *pleased*, by Rule 9.—WAS PLEASED. Verb, weak, pass., indic., past indef., sing., 3rd, agreeing with I, by Rule 1.—TO SEE. Verb, strong, act., infin., pres. indef., gov. by *was pleased*, by Rule 14.—THE. Art., def., agreeing with *workings*, by Rule 8.

—DIFFERENT. Adj. pos. degree.—WORKINGS. Verbal noun, pl., obj., governed by *to see*, by Rule 2.—(OF INSTINCT) IN. Prep.—A. Art., indef., agreeing with *hen*, by Rule 8.—(HEN) FOLLOWED. Part., past indef.—BY. Prep.—(A) BROOD. Noun, collective, neut., obj., gov. by *by*, by Rule 2. C.—(OF DUCKS.)—THE. Art. def.—YOUNG. Adj., Absolute, pl. (301), nom. to *ran*.—(UPON THE SIGHT OF A POND) IMMEDIATELY. Adv. of time, qualifying *ran*.—RAN. Verb, strong, neut., indic., past indef., pl., 3rd, agreeing with *young*, by Rule 1.—(INTO) IT. Pron. pers., neut., sing., 3rd, agreeing with *pond*, by Rule 6; obj., governed by *into*, by Rule 2. C.—WHILE. Adv. of time.—(THE) STEP-MOTHER. Noun. com., fem., sing., nom. to *hovered*.—(WITH) ALL. Adj. (86).—(IMAGINABLE ANXIETY, HOVERED ABOUT THE BORDERS OF IT) TO CALL. Verb, weak, act., infin. of purpose (368).—(THEM) OUT. Adv. qualifying the verb *to call*.—(OF AN ELEMENT) THAT. Pron. rel., neut., sing., 3rd, agreeing with *element*, by Rule 6; nom. to *appeared*, by Rule 6. 1.—(TO HER) SO. Adv., qualifying *dangerous*, placed before it, by Rule 9.—DANGEROUS. Adj., pos. deg.—AND. Conj.—DESTRUCTIVE. Adj., pos. deg.

NOTE.—Here some words have not been parsed, because they, or others like them, have occurred before. The words not parsed are enclosed in brackets.

400. B.—The following is the form in which a Parsing Exercise should be *written*:—

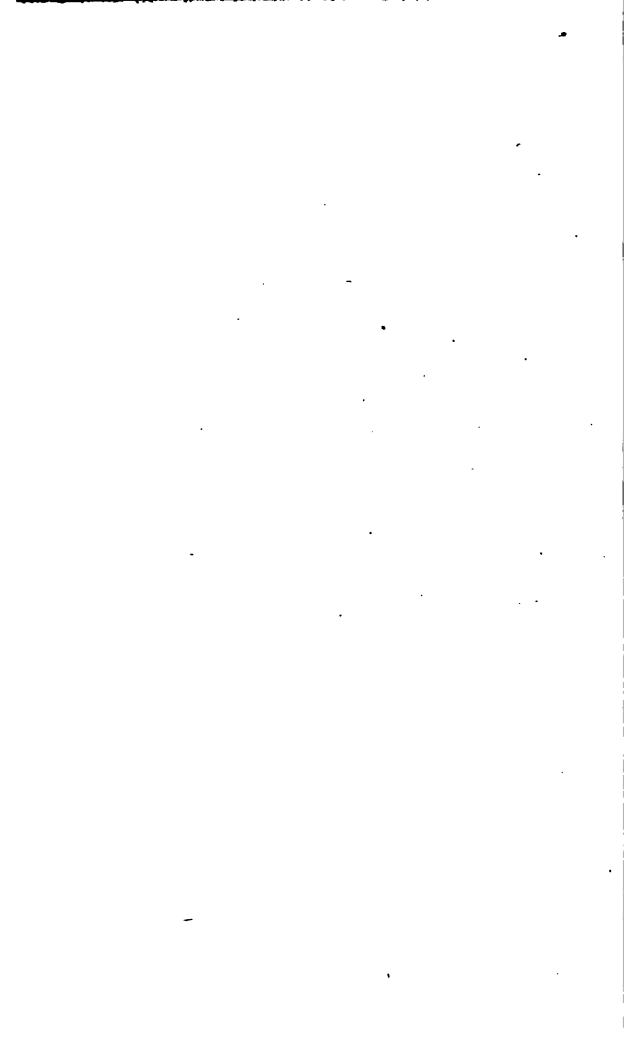
MY BROTHER WAS WITH ME; AFTER HE HAD GAZED ON THE SCENE, HE CRIED OUT, OH! HOW WONDERFUL AND BEAUTIFUL ARE THE WORKS OF NATURE.

MY Pron. Poss. I. C. S. agr. w. *brother*.
 BROTHER Noun Com. M. S. N. to *was*.
 WAS Verb Irr. Neut. Ind. Past Indef. S. 3. agr. w. *brother*; R. 1.
 WITH Prep.
 ME Pron. Pers. I. C. S. O. gov. by *with*; R. 2. C.
 AFTER Adv. of Time, conn. w. v. *had gazed*.
 HE Pron. Pers. III. M. S. N. to *had gazed*;
 HAD GAZED .. Verb, Weak, Neut. Ind. Past Comp. S. 3. agr. w. *he*; R. 1.
 ON Prep.
 THE Art. Def. agr. w. *scene*; R. 8.
 SCENE Noun Com. N. S. O. gov. by *on*; R. 2. C.
 HE Pron. Pers. III. M. S. N. to *cried out*.
 CRIED OUT.... Prep. Verb, Weak, Act. Ind. Past Indef. S. 3. agr. w. *he*; R. 1.
 OH! Interj.; R. 21.
 HOW Adv. of Degree, conn. w. *wonderful and beautiful*; R. 9.
 WONDERFUL.. Adj. Pos. agr. w. *works*; R. 7.
 AND Conj., coupling *wonderful* to *beautiful*.
 BEAUTIFUL .. Adj. Pos. agr. w. *works*; R. 7.
 ARE Verb, Irr., Neut. Ind. Pres. Indef. Pl. 3. agr. w. *works*; R. 1.
 THE Art. Def. agr. w. *works*; R. 8.
 WORKS Noun, Com. N. Pl. N. to *are*.
 OF Prep.
 NATURE Noun, Com. N. S. O. gov. by *of*; R. 2. C.

NOTE 1.—The agreement, government, or arrangement, can be required of those pupils only who have gone, or are going, through the Syntax.

NOTE 2.—Very great stress should be laid on the neatness with which these Parsing Exercises are written.

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO LIBRARY



37th Edition, 1s. 8d., bound in red.

THE INTELLECTUAL CALCULATOR;

A Complete Course of SLATE and MENTAL ARITHMETIC, in a graduated System, including all the usual Rules.

Several Scholastic Establishments ascribe their success entirely to the introduction of this Arithmetic.

The results of its System of Mental Arithmetic, even in very young pupils, astonishes the best mathematicians and the most practised men of business.

NEW EDUCATIONAL SERIES.

I. DAILY LESSON BOOK, No. 1.

With Simple Exercises, &c. 24mo. 3d.

II. DAILY LESSON BOOK, No. 2.

With Hints for Questions and Moral Lessons. 18mo. 1s.

III. DAILY LESSON BOOK, No. 3.

In PROSE and POETRY, with Analyses, and Simultaneous Lessons, or Gallery Lessons. 12mo. 1s. 6d.

IV. DAILY LESSON BOOK, No. 4.

Including Lessons in History, Physics, Natural History, Geography, and Miscellanies, with a most copious and varied Appendix. 12mo. 324 pages. 2s. 6d.

These have been adopted in many Public Schools, and in those of the British and Foreign School Society.—A superior Edition for other Schools.

Just Published, in royal 18mo. 4s. 6d.

The

ILLUSTRATED NATURAL PHILOSOPHY,

Comprising nearly 1000 Questions, Illustrations, and Experiments; with upwards of 300 Engravings; and comprehending the following Sciences:—

Laws of Matter
and Motion
Mechanics
Hydrostatics
Hydraulics

Pneumatics
Meteorology
Acoustics
Optics

Astronomy
Aerostation
Chemistry
Electricity

Galvanism
Magnetism
Laws of Heat
Steam Engine

To the Teacher invaluable for its arrangement and apt illustration, the completeness and distinctness of its paragraphs, its questions, and its introductory model lessons. It embraces the newest discoveries, the latest inventions, and the popular application of the Sciences.

Seventh Edition, fcp. 8vo. boards, 3s. 6d.

PRINCIPLES OF TEACHING;

OR, PRACTICAL SUGGESTIONS ON THE GOVERNMENT AND
INSTRUCTION OF SCHOOLS.

"Should be in the hands of every Teacher."

SIMPKIN &
HAMILTON, AD

T;
OW;

